Cheape and good

# HUSBANDRY

FOR

The well-Ordering of all Beasts and Fowles, and for the generall Cure of their Diseases.

Containing the Natures, Breeding, Choice, Use, Feeding, and Curing of the diseases of all manner of Cattell as *Horse, Oxe, Cow, Sheepe, Goats, Swine*, and tame *Conies*.

Shewing further, the whole Art of Riding great Horses, with the breaking, and ordering of them, and the dieting of the Running, Hunting, and Ambling Horse, and the manner how to use them in their travaile.

*Also approoved Rules for the Cramming, and Fatting of all sorts of Poultry, and Fowles, both tame, and wild, &c. And diverse good, and well approved Medicines for the Cure of all the diseases in Hawkes, of what kind soever.*

Together with the use, and profit of Bees, the making of Fish-ponds, and the taking of all sorts of Fish

Gathered together for the generall good and profit of this whole Realm, by exact & assured experience from English practises, both certain, easie, and cheap, differing from all former and forraign experiments, which either agreed not with our Clime, or were too hard to come by, or over-costly, and to little purpose: all which herein are avoyded. Newly corrected and inlarged with many excellent additions, as may appeare by this marke, ☞

*The seventh Edition.*

Printed at London by *Bernard Alsop*, for *John Harrison*, and are to be sold at his shop in Pauls Church-yard. 1648.

L.S.

# TO THE RIGHT HONOVRABLE,

And

## Moſt ennobled with all inward and outward vertues, *Richard Sackvile* Baron of *Buckhurſt*, and Earl of *Dorſet*, &c.

*ALthough the monſtrous ſhapes of bookes (Right Honourable and beſt ennobled Lord) have with their diſguiſed and unprofitable viſardlike faces, half ſcared even vertue her ſelf from that ancient defence and patronage, (which in former ages moſt nobly ſhee imployed, to preſerve them from envy: yet ſo much I know, the largeneſſe of your worthy breſt is endued with wiſdome, courage, and bounty, that notwithſtanding the vanities of our ignorant writers, you will be pleaſed out of your Noble Spirit favourably to*

behold

*hold whatsoever shall bring a publike good to our Countrey, at which end I have onely aymed in this small book. In which having run far from the way or tract of other writers in this nature, yet I doubt not but your honor shal find my path both more easie more certain, and more safe then any, nay, by much, far lesse difficult or dangerous to walke in. I must confesse, something in this nature I have formerly published, as namely of the horse onely, with whose nature and use I have been exercised and acquainted from my Childhood, and I hope, without boast need not yeeld to any in this Kingdome. Yet in this work, I hope your Lordship, & al other princely maintainers of that worthy and serviceable beast, shal find, I have found out, and herein explained a nearer and more easie course for his preservation, and health, then hath hitherto been found or practised by any, but my self onely, whatsoever it is, in all humblenesse I offer it is as a sacrifice of my love and service to your honour, and will ever whilest I have breath to be,*

be your honours

in all dutifull service,

*G. M.*

# TO THE COURTEOUS READER.

There is no Artist or man of industry (courteous and Gentle Reader) which mixeth judgement with his experience, but findeth in the travel of his labours better and nearer courses to make perfect the beauty of his work, then were at first presented to the eie of his knowledge: for the mind being pre-occupied and busied with a vertuous search, is ever ready to catch hold of whatsoever can adorn or illustrate the excellencie of the thing in which he is imployed: and hence it hapneth that my self having seriously bestowed many years to find out the truth of these knowledges, of which I have intreated in this booke; have now found out the infallible way of curing all diseases in Cattle, which is by many degrees more certain, more easie, lesse difficult, and without al manner of cost and extraordinary charges, then ever have been published by any home-born or forraign practiser. Wherein (friendly Reader) thou shalt find that my whole drift is to help the needfull in his most want and extremity. For having many times in my journying seene poore and rich mens Cattell fall sodainly sick, from travelling by the way, some drawing in the Plough or draught, and some

upon other imployments; I have alſo beheld thoſe cattell or horſe-dye, ere they could be brought either to a Smith, or other place where they might receive cure; nay, if with much paines they have been brought to the place of cure, yet have I ſeen Smiths ſo unprovided of Apothecary ſimples, that for want of matter of ſixpence, a beaſt hath dyed worth many Angels. To prevent this, I have found out thoſe certain and approved Cures, wherein if every good horſe-lover, or Husbandman, wil but acquaint his knowledge with a few herbs, or common-weeds he ſhall be ſure in every field, paſture, meadow, or Land-furrow; nay, almoſt by every High-way ſide, or blind ditch, to find that which ſhall preſerve and keep his horſe from all ſuddain extremities. If thou ſhalt find benefit, think mine hours not ill waſted; if thou ſhalt not have occaſion to approve them yet give them thy gentle paſſage to others, and thinke me as I am,

*Thy Friend,*

*G. M.*

# The table of the first Booke.

## *Of Beasts,*

### Of the Horse.


*Of the horse in general.* pag. 1.
*Nature of Horses.* p. 2.
*Choice of Horses, and their shapes.* ibid
*Colours of Horses.* 3
*Horse for a Princes seat.* ib.
*Horses for travell.* ib.
*Hunting-horses.* 4
*Running horses.* ib.
*Coach horses.* ib.
*Pack-horses.* 5
*Cart-horses.* ib.
*Of Mares.* ib.
*Ordering horses for service.* ib
*Ordering horses for a Princes seat.* 6.
*Ordering of traveling horses.* 7
*Ordering of hunting-horses* 8
*Ordering of running-horses.* ib
*Ordering of coach-horse.* 9
*Ordering of the pack or cart-horse.* 9
*The preservation of horses.* ib.
*Of riding in generall.* 10
*Imperfect use of this recreation.* ib.
*The pleasure of riding.* 11
*The Authors Apology.* ib.
*The taming of a young colt.* 12
*His sadling & bridling.* ib
*His first backing.* 13
*Three maine points of a horse mans skill.* 15
*Of helps, & what they be.* ib
*Of corrections and which they be.* 16
*Of cherishings.* ib.
*Of the Musrole and Martingale.* 17
*Of treding the large rings.* pag. 18


Choice

*Choice of grounds.* p. 18
*Of galloping large rings.* 20
*Helps in the large ring turns* ib.
*Corrections in the ring turns* 21
*Cherishings in the ring turns* 22
*Of stopping & going back.* ib
*Helpes.* 23
*Corrections.* ib.
*Cherishings.* 24
*Of advancing before.* ib.
*Helpes.* 25
*Corrections.* ib.
*Cherishings.* 26
*The use of advancing.* ib.
*Of yerking behind.* ib
*Helps.* 27
*Corrections.* ib.
*Cherishings.* ib
*Of turning.* ib.
*Helps.* 30
*Corrections.* ib
*Cherishings.* ib.
*Of the turning post.* 22
*Of managing.* 33
*Diversities of manages.* 34
*Of the Cariere.* 34
*Horses for pleasure.* 35
*Of bounding aloft.* ib.
*Of the Corvet.* 36
*Of the galop Galliard.* ib
*Of the Capriolle.* 37
*Of going aside.* 38
*Of riding before a Prince.* 39
*Of the Caragolo.* ib.
*To ride for recreation.* 40
*Of breeding of all sorts of horses fit for the Husband-mans use.* 41
*Grounds to breed on.* 42
*Division of grounds.* ib.
*Choice of the Stallion.* 43
*Choice of Mares.* ib.
*When to put them together.* ib.
*Of covering Mares.* 44
*To know if a Mare hold.* ib.
*To conceive Male foales.* ib.
*To provoke lust.* 45
*To keep Mares from barrennesse.* ibid.
*Ordering Mares after covering.* ib.
*A help for Mares in foaling.* 46.
*Ordering Mares after foaling.* ib.
*Weaning of foales.* ib.
*Ordering after Weaning.* ib.
*Gelding of Colts.* ib.
*Of horses for travell, and how to make them amble.* 47
*The marks of a good travelling Horse.* ib

*To make a horſe amble.* p. 47
*Divers ways of ambling.* 48
*Of travelling.* ib.
*Of Wiſping.* ib.
*Helpes in ambling.* ib.
*The ordering and dyeting of the Hunting-horſe.* 49
*Taking up the hunting-horſe* 50
*Cloathing the hunting-horſe.* ib.
*Dreſſing the Hunting-horſe.* 51
*Of watering and feeding the hunting-horſe.* 52
*The exerciſe of the horſe.* 53
*The ſcowring of the horſe.* 54
*Ordering a horſe after exerciſe.* 55
*Of ordering, dyeting, taking up, cloathing, dreſſing, watering and feeding the Running-horſe.* 55 & 56
*Of his exerciſe by ayring and courſing.* 56, & 57
*Of ſweats.* 58
*Of ſcouring him.* 59
*Ordering after exerciſe.* ib.
*Generall rules for a running horſe.* ib.
*Generall rules for a travelling-horſe.* 60
*How to cure all inward ſickneſſes.* 62
*Of the head-ach Frenzie, or Staggers.* 63
*Of the ſleeping evill.* ib.
*Of the falling-evill, Planet-ſtrucke, Night-mare, or Palſey.* 64
*Of the generall cramp, or convulſion of ſinewes.* ib.
*Of any Cold or Cough, wet or dry, or for any conſumption or putrefaction of the Lungs, whatſoever.* 65
*Of the running Glaunders, or mourning of the Chine.* 65
*Of hide-bound or conſumption o the fleſh.* 66
*Of the breſt paine or any ſickeneſſe of the heart.* ib.
*Of tyred horſes.* ib.
*Of diſeaſes of the ſtomack, as Surfeits, loathing of meat, or drink.* 67
*Of foundring in the body.* ib.
*Of the Hungry-evill.* 68
*Of diſeaſes in the Liver, &c.* ib.
*Of the Yellowes, and diſeaſes of the Gall.* ib.
*Of the ſickeneſſe of the ſpleene,*

ſpleen, p. 69
Of the dropſie, or evil habit of the body. ib.
Of the Chollick, belly-ake, or Belly-bound. p. 70
Of the lax, or bloudy flux. ib.
Of the falling of the Fundament. 71
Of Bots and Wormes of all ſorts. ib.
Of paine in the kidneyes, painpiſſe, and ſtone. ib.
Of the ſtrangullion. ib.
Of piſſing bloud. p. 72
Of the Colt evil, mattering of the yard, falling of the yard, ſhedding of ſeed. ib.
Of the particular diſeaſes of Mares, as barrennes, conſumption, rage of love, caſting foales, hardneſſe to foal, and to make a Mare caſt her foal, ib.
Of drinking venome, &c. p. 73
Of Suppoſitaries, Gliſters, & purgations. ib.
Of nezing, & fritions. 74
Of all the diſeaſes in the eyes 75
Of the Impoſtume in the ear, pole-evil, Fiſtula, ſwelling after bloud letting, any gald-back, Canker, ſitfaſt, wennes, navell-gall, &c. p. 75
Of the Vives. ib.
Of the ſtrangle, bile, botch, or Impoſtume. 76
Of the Canker in the noſe, or any other part. ib.
Of ſtanching blood in any part. ib.
Of the diſeaſes in the mouth, as bloudy-rifts, Iigs, Lampas, Camery, inflamation, tongue hurt, or the barbs. 77.
Of pain in the teeth, or looſe teeth. ib.
Of the crick in the neck. ib.
Of the falling of the Creſt, mangineſſe in the maine, or ſhedding of hair. 78
Of pain in the withers. ib.
Of ſwaying the back, or weakneſſe in the back. ib.
Of the Itch in the taile, ſcab, mangines or farcie. 79
Of any halting whatſoever, &c. ib.
Of ſoundring in the feet. 80
Of the ſplent, curbe, bone ſpaven

*ſpaven or any knob, or bony excreſſion, or ringbone.* 80
Of the *Mallander, Sellander, Paines, Scratches, Mallat, Mules, Crowne-ſcab, &c.* 81
*Of any upper attaint, or neather, or any over-raching.* ibid.
*Of all the infirmities of, in, or about the hoves, &c.* 82
*Of the blood ſpaven, hough, bony, or any other unnaturall ſwelling.* ib.
Of *Wind-gals.* 83
Of *enterfearing, ſhacklegall, &c.* ib.
*Hurts on the Cronet, as quilter bone, or matlong.* 84
*Of wounds in the foot, gravelling, pricking, fig, retrait, or cloying.* ib.
*To draw out ſtub, or thorne.* ib.
Of *any Aubury, or Tetter.* 84
*Of the cords, or ſtring-halt.* 85
Of *ſpur-galling, &c.* ib.
*To heal any ſore or wound.* ib.
Of *ſinewes cut.* ib.
*Of eating away dead fleſh.* ib.
*Of knotts in joynts.* 86
*Of venemous wounds, &c.* ib.
*Of Lice or Nits.* ib.
*To defend a horſe from flies.* ib.
*Of bones broke or out of joint.* ib.
*Of drying or skinning ſores, when they are almoſt whole.* 87
*A moſt famous receit, to make a Horſe, that is lean, and that is full of inward ſickneſſe, ſound, & fat, in fourteen days.* ibid.
*To make a white ſtar.* 88

## Of the Bull, Calfe, Cow, or Oxe.

OF *the Bul, Cow, Calf, or Oxe, &c.* 88
*The Countries for breede.* 88
*Of not mixing, and mixing breeds.* 89
*The ſhape of the Bul.* ib.
*The uſe of the Bul.* 90

*The*

The ſhape of the Cow. 90
The uſe of the Cow. ib.
Of Calves, & their nouriſhing. ib.
Obſervations for Calves. ib
Of the Oxe, and his uſe. 91
Of the Oxes food for labour. 92
Oxen to feed for the butcher ib.
To preſerve Cattel in health ib.
Of the feaver in Cattel. 93
Of any inward ſickneſſ. ib.
Of the diſeaſes in the head, as ſturdy, &c. ib.
Of all the diſeaſes in the eies of Cattell, &c. 14
Of diſeaſes in the mouth, as barbs, bleans, &c. 95
Of diſeaſes in the neck as being galled, bruiſed, ſwolne, cloſh, &c. ib.
Of the Peſtilence, gargill, or murrain. 96
Of miſliking, or leanneſſe. 96
Of diſeaſes in the guts, as flux, coſtiuenneſſe. 97
Of piſſing blood. ib.
Of dropping noſtrils, or any cold. ib.
Of all manner of ſwellings. ib.
Of the worme in the taile. 98
Of any cough or ſhortneſs of breath. 98
Of any Impoſthume, Bile, or botch. ib.
Of diſeaſes in the ſinewes, as weakneſſe ſtifneſſe or ſorenneſſe. ib.
Of the general ſcab, particuler ſcab, or ſcurf. 99
Of the hide-bound, or dry-skin ib.
Of diſeaſes in the Lungs, as Lung-grown, &c. ib.
Of the biting with a mad dog or other venemous beaſt. 100
Of the falling downe of the pallat.
Of any paine in the hoof, as the foul, &c. 101
Of all kindes of bruiſings. 101
Of ſwallowing hens dung, or any poyſon. 101
Of killing Lice, or Tickes. ibid.
Of the dew bowle. 102
Of the loſſe of the Cud. ib.
Of the killing of all ſorts of Wormes. 103
Of vomiting blood. ib.

Of the Gout 103
Of Milting. ib.
Of provoking a beast to piss. 104
Of the overflowing of the gal ib.
Of a beast that is goared. ib.
Of the Cow that is wethered. ib.
Of drawing out of thornes, or stubs. 104
Of purging Cattell. 105
Of being shrew-runne. 105
Of faintnesse. 105
Of breeding milk in a Cow. ib.
Of bones out of joynt or broken. 106
Of the rot in beasts. ib.
Of the Pantas. ib.
Of al maner of wounds. 106

## Of the Sheepe.

Of Sheepe, their use, choice, shape, and preservation 107
Of the staple of Woall. 108
Of the choice of Sheep. ibid.
Of the leare of Sheep. ib.
The shape of Sheep. 109
When Ews should bring forth ib.
Ordering of lambes. 110
Needfull observations. ib.
The preservation of Sheepe. 111
The signes to know a sound Sheep, and an unsound. 112
Of sickneße in Sheep in the Feaver, &c. 112
Of the generall scab. ib
Of killing Maggots. 113
Of the Red-water. ib.
Of lung-sick, or any cough, or cold, ib.
Of the worm in the claw, or in any other part. 114
Of wild-fire. ib.
Of the diseases of the gall, as Choller, Iaundies, &c. ib.
Of the tough flegme or stoppings. ib.
Of the bones broken or out of joynt. 113

Of

Of any ſickneſſe in Lambes. 115
Of the ſturdy, turning evill, or more-found. ib.
Of all diſeaſes in the eyes in generall. ib.
Of water in a Sheepes belly. 116
Of the tag'd or belt ſheepe. ib
Of the poxe in ſheep. ib,
Of the wood-evill or cramp. ib.
Of making an Ewe love her own Lamb, or any other Ewes Lamb. 117
Of licking up poiſon. ib.
Of Lambs yeaned ſick. ib.
Of making an Ewe to be eaſily delivered. 118
Of teeth looſe. ib.
Of increaſing milke. ib.
Of the ſtaggers or leaſe, ſickneſſe. ib.
Of all ſorts of worms. 119
Of the loſſe of the Cud. ib,
Of ſaving ſheep from the rot. ib.
A few precepts for the Shepherd. 120

## Of Goats.

OF Goats, and their Natures. 121
The ſhape of Goats. 122
The ordering of Goats. ib.
Of any inward ſickneſs, as the peſtilence, &c. 123
Of the dropſie. 123
Of ſtopping the teats. 124
Of Goats that cannot kid. 124
Of the Tetter, or dry ſcabbe. ib.
Of gelding kids. ib.
Of the itch in Goats. 125
Of the tuell-ſtopping. 125
Of the ſtaggers. 125

## Of Swine.

OF all manner of Swine. 126
The nature of Swine. ibid.
Of the choice and ſhape of Swine. 127
Of the uſe and profit of Swine

*swine.* 128
*Of the feaver or any hidden sickneſse in swine.* 129
*Of Murraine, peſtilence, or catarrhe.* 130
*Of the gall in swine.* ib.
*Of the Meazles.* ib.
*Of the Impoſtums in any part* ibid.
*Of vomiting.* 131
*Of leanneſs miſlike ſcurfe, or maunginеſſe.* ib.
*Of the ſleeping evill.* ib.
*Of pain in the Milt.* 132
*Vnnaturalneſs in swine.* ib.
*Of the laxe or Fluxe.* ib.
*Of the lugi ng of swine with dogs.* 133
*Of the poxe in swine.* ib.
*Of killing Maggets in any part.* ib.
*Of feeding swine either for Bacon or Lard.* ib.
*Of feeding swine in Wood-countries.* ib.
*Of feeding swine in Champion countries.* 134
*Of feeding at the reek.* ib.
*Of feeding swine in or about great cities.* 135
*Of feeding Hogs for Lard or Bores for Brawn.* ib.

## Of Conies.

*OF tame Conies in generall.* 138
*The nature of the Cony.* ib.
*Of boxes for tame conies* 139
*Of the choice & profit of rich conies.* 139 & 140
*Of the feeding and preſervation of Conies..* 140
*Of the rot amongſt conies.* 141
*Of madneſse in conies.* ibid.

# The Table of the ſecond Booke.

## Of *Poultry*.


OF *the Dunghill Cocke, Henne, Chicken, and Capon.* 144.
*Of the dunghill cock.* ib.
*Of the choice & ſhape of the Cock.* 145
*Of the Henne, her choice & ſhape.* ibid.
*Of ſetting Hennes.* ib.
*Of the choice of Egges.* ib.
*Of Chickens.* 146
*Of feeding and cramming chickens.* ib.
*Of preſerving Egges.* 148
*Of gathering Egges.* ib.
*Of the capon & when to carve him.* ib.
*Of the Capon to lead Chickens.* ib.
*Of feeding and cramming Capons.* 148
*Of the Pepin Poultry.* 149
*Of the roupe.* ib.
*Of the flux.* 150
*Of ſtopping in the belly.* ib.
*Of lice in Poultry.* ib.
*Of ſtinking with venemous wormes.* ib.
*Of all ſore eys.* ib.
*Of hens which crow.* 151
*Of Hens which eat their egs* ibid.
*Of keeping a hen from ſitting.* ibid.
*Of making hens lay ſoon & oft.* ib.
*Of making hens lean.* ib
*Of the Crow-trodden.* 52
*Of the hen houſe and ſituation.* ib.


## Geeſe.


OF *the Gooſe in Gene-*
*Of the choice of Geeſe.* 153

Of the ordering of Goslings. 154
Of greene geese, & their fatting. ib.
Of Ganders. ib.
Of fatting of elder Geese. 155.
Of gathering of Geese feathers. ib.
Of the gargell in geese. ib.

## Of Turkies.

Of Turkies in generall 156
Of the choice of the Turkey-Cock. ib.
Of the Turkey hen, and her sitting. 156
Of the feeding of Turkeyes. 157

## Of Water-foule and others.

Of the tame Duck 57
Of wild Duckes and their ordering. 158
Of Swans, and their feeding. ib.
Of Peacokes and Pea-hennes. 159
Of the tame pigeon or rough footed. 160
Of nouriſhing and fatting Hearnes, Puets, Guls, and Bitters. 161
Of feeding Patridge, Pheaſant and Quail. 162
Of Godwits, Knots, Gray Plovers or Curlewes. 162
Of blackbirds, Thruſhes, ſelfares 63

## Of Hawkes.

Of Hawkes in generall of all kinds. 164
Of Scourings. 65
Impoſtumes in Hawkes. 166
Of ſore eies in Hawkes. 166
Of the Pantis 167
Of caſting the Gorge. ib.
Of all ſorts of worms or Pilanders. ib.

Of all swelling in Hawkes feet. 167
Of the breaking of a pounce 168
Of bones broke, or out of joynt. ib.
Of all inward bruisings. ib.
Of killing Lice. ib.
Of the Rie. ib.
Of the Frounce. ib.
Of the Rheums. 170
Of the Formicas. ib.
Of the Fistula. 171
Of the privie evill. ib.
Of all sorts of wounds. 172
Of the Apoplexie, or falling Evill. 173
Of the purging of hawks, ib.
Of a hawk that cannot mute 174
The assuredst signs to know when a Hawk is sick. 461
Of the Fever in Hawkes. 175
Of helping a Hawke that cannot digest. ib.
Of the Gout in Hawks. 176
Of the stanching of bloud. ib.

## Of Bee.

OF Bees in generall. 177
Of the nature of Bees, ib.
Of the Bee-hive, 178
Of the triming of the Hive, ib.
Of the placing of hives, 179
Of the casting of Bees, and ordering the swarms. 179
Of selling Hives. 181
Of the preservation of weak stockes.
An excellent secret concerning Bees. 182

## Of Fishing.

A Plat-form for Fish-ponds. 183
Of fishing in generall. 184
Of the taking of all sorts of Fish with Nets, or otherwise. 186

# A Short Table expounding all the hard words in this book,

## A

A*Vripigmentum* or *Orpment*, is a yellow hard ſubſtance to be bought at the Pothecaries.

*Ariſtilochia-longa*, otherwiſe called red *Madder*, is an herb gowing almoſt in every field.

*Ariſtolochia-rotunda*, is the herb called *Galingale*.

*Agrimony* or *Egrimony*,, is an uſuall and known herb.

*Ameos*, *Commin royall*, is an herb of ſome called *Bulwort*, *Biſhops-weed*, or *Herb-VVilliam*.

*Aniſe*, is that hearb which beares *Aniſe-ſeeds*.

*Avet*, of ſome called *Dill*, is an herb like *Fennell*, only the ſeeds are broad like *Orenge ſeeds*.

*Agnus-caſtus*, of ſome called *Tuleſaine*, is an herb with reddiſh leaves, and ſinewie like *Plantain*.

*Ægyptiacum*, is a reddiſh *Vnguent* to be bought at the Pothecaries and is ſoveraign for *Fiſtulaes*.

*Aſſafœtida*, a ſtinking ſtrong gum to be bought at the Pothecaries.

*Adraces*, or *Adarces* is that *Salt* which is in gendred on the Mariſhes by the violence of the Suns heat after the tide is gon away.

*Aſterion*, is an herb growing amongſt ſtones, as on

walls or, ſuch like, it appeareth by night, it hath yellow flowers like Fox gloves, and the leaves are round and blewiſh,

*Aloes*, is a bitter gum to be bought at the Pothecaries.

*B*

*Betin*, or *Beets* is an herb with long broad leaves, indented and grows iu hedge-rows.

*Bolarmoniack*, is a red hard earthly ſubſtance, to bee bought at the Pothecaries, and is of a cold and binding nature.

*Broomwort*, is an herb with brown coloured leaves, and beareth a blew flower, and moſt commonly grows in woods.

*C*

*Creſſes* are of two kinds, *Water-Creſſes*, and *Land-Creſſes*: they have broad ſmooth leaves, and the firſt grows in moiſt places, the latter in gardens, or by high-wayes.

*Comin*, ſee *Ameos*.

*Carthamus* is an herb in taſte like *Saffron* and is called *baſtard-Saffron*, or *mock-Saffron*.

*Calamint*, is an ordinary hearbe, and groweth by ditches ſides by high-wayes, and ſome times in Gardens.

*Coriander*, is an herb which beareth a round little ſeed.

*Cives*, are a ſmall round herb growing in Gardens, like little young *onyons*, or *ſcallions* not above a weeke old.

*D*

*Diapente*, a ſoveraigne powder made of five equall ſimples, as *Bay-berries*, *Ivory*, *Ariſtolochia-rotunda*

*Myrrhe*

*Myrrhe*, and *Gentiana*, may be bought of the Potheca-ry.

*Dettony* is an hearb called *Pepper-wort*, or *Horſe-radiſh*, and groweth in many open fields.

*Dragon* is an hearb common in every Garden.

*E*

*Elecampana* is an herbe of ſome called *Horſe-helme*, and grows almoſt in every field, and every Gar-den.

*Eye-bright* is an herb growing in every Meadow.

*F*

*Fennegreeke* is an herbe which hath a long ſlender trayling ſtalk, hollow within, and ſown in Gardens, but eaſieſt to be had at the Apotheearies.

*Ferneoſmund* is an herbe of ſome called *water-fern*, hath a triangular ſtalk, and is like *Polipody*, and it growes in Bogs and hollow grounds.

*G*

*Galingale*, ſee *Ariſtolochia-rotunda*.

*H*

*Horſe-mint* is an herb that growes by water ſides, and is called *Water-mint*, or *Brook-mint*.

*Horſe-helme*, ſee *Elecampana*.

*Houſe-leek* is a weed which growes upon the tops of houſes that are thatcht, and are like unto a ſmall *Arti-choke*.

*Herbe-Robert* hath leaves like *Herb-Bennet*, and ſmall flowers of a purple colour, and growes in moſt com-mon fields and gardens.

*I*

*Ivory* is the ſhavings of the *Elephants* tooth, or the old *Harts* or *Stags* horne, being the ſmooth white thereof.

K

*Knot-graſſe* is a long round weed, with little round ſmooth leaves, and the ſtalke very knotty and rough, winding and wreathing one ſeame into another very confuſedly, and groweth for the moſt part in very moyſt places.

L

*Lettice* is a common ſallet herb in every garden.

*Lollium* is that weed which we call *Cockell*, and groweth amongſt the corn in every field.

*Liverwort* is a common herb in every garden.

M

*Mayth* is a weed that grows amongſt corn, and is called of ſome *Hogs-fennel*.

*Myrrhe* is a gumme to be bought at the Pothecaries.

*Man-drag* is an herbe which growes in gardens, and beareth certain yellow Apples, from whence the Pothecaries draw a ſoveraign oyl for broken bones.

N

*Neepe*, ſee *Calamint*.

O

*Origanum* is an hearb called *Wild-Marjoram*, and growes both in open fields, or in low copſes.

*Oriſice* is the mouth, hole, or open paſſage of any wound or ulcer.

*Opoponax*, a drug uſuall to be bought at the Pothecaries.

P

*Pitch of Burgundy* is *Roſſen*, and the blacker the better.

*Plantaine* is a fat leafe and ſinewie, growing cloſe

to

to the ground, and is called Whay-bred leafe.

*Pliell-royall* is an hearb that groweth both in fields and gardens, and is best when it flowreth.

*Patch-greafe* is that tallow which is gotten from the boyling of Shoomakers threads.

Q

*Quinque folio*, of some called *Cinque-foyle*, is that herb which is called *Five-leaved* grasse.

R

*Red-Oaker* is a hard red stone which we call *Saddle*, *Orell*, *Marking-stone*.

S

*Selendine*, or *Tetterwort*, is a weed growing in the bottom of hedges which being broke, a yelow juice will drop and runne out of it.

*Sherwit* is an herb with many small leavs, and grows most in gardens.

*Stubwort* is an herb which grows in wooddy places, and is called *Wood Sorrell*.

*Sanguis Draconis* is a hard red gum to be bought at the Pothecaries.

*Sperma-Cæla* is the seed of the *Whale*, excellent for inward bruises and to be bought at the Pothecaries.

*Stonecrop* is a greene weede growing on the tops of walles.

*Salarmoniacke* is a drug to be bought at the Pothecaries.

T

*Tussilaginis* is that weed which we call *Colts-foot*.

*Triapharmicon* a composition made of three simples, and to be bought at the Pothecaries.

*Turn-merick* is a yellow Simple, of strong savour, to be bought at the Pothecaries.

*Verdi-*

W

*Verdi-greese*, is a greene fatty gumme drawn from Copper: and is to be bought at the Pothecaries.

W

*Wood-rose*, or *Wild Eglantine*, is that small thin flower which growes upon Bryars in Woods or Hedges.

Y

*Yarrow* is an herb called the *Water-violet*, & grows in Lakes or Marish grounds.

FINIS.

## The Diviſion of the titles intreated *of in theſe Bookes following-*


1. FIrſt, of the *Horſe*, his Nature, Diſeaſes, and Cures; with the whole Art of Riding, and ordering all ſorts of *Horſes*, from *fol.* 1. to 88.
2. Of the *Bull*, *Cow*, *Calfe*, or *Oxe*, their breeding, feeding and curing. from *fol.* 88. to 107.
3. Of Sheepe, their choice, uſe, ſhape, infirmities, and preſervation. from *fol.* 107. to 120.
4. Of Goates, their nature, ſhape or dering, and curing, from *fol.* 121. to 126.
5. Of *Swine*, their choice, breeding, curing, and feeding, in either Champion or Wood-countries, from *fol.* 126. to 138.
6. Of tame *Conies*, from *fol.* 138. to 144.
7. Of *Poultrie* their ordering, fatting, cramming, and curing all the diſeaſes to them incident from *fol* 144. to 163.
8. Of *Hawkes*, either ſhort-winged or long-winged: the generall cures for their diſeaſes and infirmities. from *fol.* 164. to 176.


Of

9. Of *Bees*, their ordering, profit, and preservation, from *fol.* 177. to 183.
10. Of *Fishing*, and making *Fish-ponds*, from *fol.* 138. to the end.

*Published by Authority.*

# THE GENERALL CURE AND Ordering of all Horſes: As alſo the whole Art of Riding great Horſes, with the breeding, breaking, and ordering of them: Together with the manner how to uſe the Running, Hunting and ambling horſe, before, in, and after their Travaile.

## CHAP. I.

*Of the Horſe in generall, his choiſe for every ſeverall uſe, his ordering, Dyet, and beſt preſervation for health, to be in Travaile, and in reſt.*

THE full ſcope and purpoſe of this work, is in few, plain, and moſt undoubted true words, to ſhew the Cure of all manner of diſeaſes belonging to all manner of neceſſary Cattell, nouriſhed and preſerved for the uſe of man, making by way of demonſtration ſo eaſie and plaine a paſſage, to the underſtanding and accompliſhment of the ſame, that not the ſimpleſt, which hath priviledge to be eſteemed no Idiot; nor the pooreſt, if he can make two ſhillings, but ſhall both underſtand how to profit himſelfe by the Book,

and at the deareſt rate purchaſe all the recipts and ſimples declared in the whole Volume. For in ſober truth this book is fit for every Gentleman, Husbandman & good mans pocket, being a memory which a man carrying about him wil when it is cald to account, give a man full ſatisfaction whether it be in the field in the town, or any other place where a man is moſt unprovided.

Nature of Horſes.

And now forasmuch as the Horſe of all Creatures is the nobleſt, ſtrongeſt, & apteſt to do a man the beſt & worthieſt ſervices, both in Peace and War, I thinke it not amiſſe firſt to begin with him. Therefore of his nature in generall: he is valiant, ſtrong & nimble, & above al other beaſts moſt apt & able to indure the extremeſt labours the moiſt quality of his compoſition bein ſuch that neither extream heat doth dry up his ſtrength, nor the violence of cold freez, the warm temper of his moving ſpirits, but that where there is any temperate government, there he with ſtandeth all effects of ſickneſs with an uncontroled conſtancy. He is moſt gentle and loving to the man, apt to be taught, and not forgetfull when an impreſſion is fixed in his brain. He is watchful above all other breaſts, and wil indure his labour with the moſt emptieſt ſtomacke: he is naturally given ro much cleanlineſs, is of an excellent ſcent, & offended with nothing ſo much as evill ſavours.

The choice of Horſes, and their ſhapes.

Now for the choice of the beſt Horſe, it is divers according to the uſe for which you will employ him. If therefore you would have a Horſe for the Wars you ſhal chuſe him that is of a good tal ſtature, with a comly lean head, an out ſwelling fore-head, a larg ſparkling eie, the white whereof is covered with the eyebrows, and not at all diſcerned, or if at all, yet the leaſt is beſt, a ſmall thinne ear ſhort and pricking; if it be long, well

carried

carryed, and ever moving, it is tolerable; but if dull or hanging, most hatefull: a deep neck, large crest, broad breast, bending ribs, broad & straight chine, round and ful buttock, with his huckle-bones hid, a tayle high and broad, set on neither too thick, nor too thin; for too much hair shews sloath, & too little too much choller and heat: a full swelling thigh, a broad, flat, and leane leg, short pastern'd, strong joynted, and hollow bones, of which the long is best, if they be not wier'd, and the broad round the worst.

The best Colours are Browne-bay, Dapple-gray, Rozad, Bright-bay, Black, with a white neere foot behind, white far-foot before, white rache, or white star, Chesse-nut or Sorrel, with any of those marks, or Dun with a black list: And of these Horses, for the Warres, the Courser of *Naples* is accounted the best, the *Almain*, the *Sardinian*, or the *French*. Colours of Horses.

If you will chuse a Horse for a Princes Seat, any supream Magistrate, or for any great Lady of State, or woman of eminence, you shal chuse him that is of the finest shape, the best reyn, who naturally bears his head in the best-place, without the help of the mans hand, that is of nimblest and easiest pace, gentle to get upon, bold without making affrights, and most familiar and quiet in the company of other horses: his colour would ever be milk white, with red frayns, or without, or else fair dapple-gray, with white maine, and white tayle: And of these the English is best, then the *Hungarian*, the *Swethland*, the *Poland*, the *Irish*. Horses for a Princes Seat.

If you wil chuse a horse only for travel, ever the better shape, the better hope, especially look that his head be lean, eyes swelling outward, his necke well risen, his chine wel risen, his joynts very strong; but above all his Horses for travaile.

pasterns short and straight, without bending in his going, and exceeding hollow and tough Hoves: let him be of temperate nature, neither too furious, nor too dull, willing to go without forcing, and not desirous to run when there is no occasion.

Coach-horses. If you will chuse a horse for hunting, let his shape in general be strong, and wel knit together, making equal proportions; for as unequal shapes shew weakness, so equal members assure strength & endurance. Your unequal shapes are a great head to a little neck, a big body to a thin buttock; a large limbe to a little foot, or any of these contraries, or where any member suits not with the whole proportion of the body, or with any limbe next adjoyning. Above all, let your hunting horse have a large lean head, wide nostrils, open chauld, a big wessand, and the wind-pipe straight, loose, well covered, and not bent in the pride of his Reining: The English horse bastardized with any of the former Races

Running horses first spoke of, is of all the best.

If you chuse a horse for running, let him have all the finest shape that may be; but above all things, let him be nimble, quick & fiery, apt to fly with the least motion: long shapes are sufferable, for though they shew weaknesse, yet they assure sudden speed. And the best Horse for this use, is the *Arabian*, *Barbary*, or his bastard. Jennets are good, but the Turks are better.

Hunting horse If you wil chuse a horse for the Coach, which is called the swift draught, let his shape be tall, broad, & wel furnisht, not grosse with much flesh, but with the bignes of his bones; especially look he have a strong neck, a broad breast, a lage chine, sound clean limbs, & tough hoves: & for this purpose, your large English Geldings are best, your Flemish Mares next, and your strong ston'd

ston'd Horses tollerable, *Flemish* or *Frisons*.

If you wil chuse a Horse for portage, that is, for the Pack or Hampers, chuse him that is exceeding strong of Body and Limbes, but not tall, with a broad Backe, out-ribs, full shoulders, and thicke withers; for if he be thin in that part, you shall hardly keepe his Back from galling: be sure that he take a strong stride with his feet, for their pace being neither trot nor amble, but only a foot pace, he which takes the largest strides goes at the most ease, and rids his ground fastest. Pac horses.

Lastly, if you wil chuse a horse for the Cart or plough which is the slow draught, chuse him that is of most ordinary height, for *horses* in the cart unequaly sorted, never draw at ease, but the tal hang up the low *horse*. Let them be of good strong portion big breasted, large bodied, & strong limb'd, by nature rather inclin'd to crave the whip, then to draw more then is needful. And for this purpose, Mares are most profitable; for besides the effecting of your work, they yeerly bring you forth increase: therefore, if you furnish your draught with Mares to breed, observe in any wise, to have them faire fore-handed, that is, good head, neck, breast & shoulders; for the rest it is not so regardful, only let her body be large; for the bigger room a Foal hath in the dams belly, the fairer are his members. And above all things, observe never to put your draught beasts to the saddle for that alters their pace, and hurts them in their Labour. Cart- horses. Of Mares

Now for the ordering of these several *horses*: first for the Horse for service, during the time of his teaching, which is out of the wars, you shal keep him high and lustily; his food, no straw, but good hay, his provender clean dry oats, or two parts oats, & one part beanes or

Peaſe, wel dryed & hard, the qnantity of half a peck at a watering, morning, noon, & evening, is ſufficient.

In his days of reſt, you ſhal dreſſe him betwixt five & ſix in the morning, water betwixt ſeven and eight, and feed from nine till after eleven: in the afternoone you ſhal dreſſe betwixt three and four, water betwixt four and five, and give provender till ſix, then litter at eight, and give food for all night. The night before he is ridden, you ſhal at nine of the clock at night take away his hay from him; at 4. of the clock in the morning give him a handful or two of oates, which being eaten, turne him upon his ſnaffle, rub all his body and legges over with dry cloaths, then ſaddle him, and make him fit for his exerciſe. Soon as he is cal'd for to be ridden, waſh his bit in faire water, and put it into his mouth with all other things neceſſary, draw up his girths, and ſee that no buckles hurt him: then lead him forth, and as ſoone as he hath been ridden, all ſweating as he is, lead him into the ſtable; and firſt rub him quickly over with dry wiſpes, then take off his ſaddle, and having rub'd him all over with dry cloaths, put on his houſing cloth, then ſet on the ſaddle again, and girt it: then lead him forth, and walk him up and down in gentle manner an houre or more, till he be cold; then ſet him up, *and after two or three hours faſting*, turn him to his meat: then in the afternoon curb, rub, and dreſſe him, then water him, and order him as is aforeſaid.

Ordering of horſes for a Princes ſeat.

For ordering of the horſe for a Prince, or great Ladies ſeat, *let it be in his time of reſt, like unto the horſe for ſervice: and in his time of labor like the travailing horſe, as ſhall be ſhewed in ſtandy: only becauſe he is to be more choiſely kept, I mean in the beautifulleſt manner, his coat lying ſmooth, and ſhining, and his whole body without any ſtaine*

*ſtain or ill-favouredneſſe*; you ſhall ever when he *hath* been ridden, and cometh in much ſweating, preſently have him into the ſtable, and firſt rub him downe with clean wiſpes, then taking off his ſaddle, with a ſword-blade whoſe edge is rebated; you ſhal itroake his neck and body clean over, leaving no ſweat nor filth that can be gotten out; *then cloath him up, and ſet on the ſaddle, and walke him forth as aforeſaid.* After, order and dyet him as you doe other travailing Horſes: dry Oates is his beſt provender, if he be fat and full; and Oates and Beans if he be poor, or ſubject to loſe his fleſh quickely.

Ordering of travailing horſes.

For your travailing Horſe, you ſhal feed him with the fineſt Hay in the winter, and the ſweeteſt graſſe in Summer: His Provender would be dry Oates, Beanes, Peaſe or bread, according to his ſtomack: in the time of reſt, half a pecke at a watering is ſufficient, in the time of his labour, as much as he will eate with a good ſtomack. When you travaile him, water two houres before you ride, then rub, dreſſe, and laſtly feed, then bridle up, and let him ſtand an hour before you take his back. Travaile moderatly in the morning, till his wind be rack'd, and his limbes warmed, then after do as your affairs require. Be ſure at night to water your horſe two miles before you come to your journies end, then the warmer you bring him to his Inne, the better: walke not, nor waſh not at all, the one doth beget colds, the other foundring in the feet or body: but let him up warme, welſtopt, & ſoundly rub'd with clean litter. Give no meat whileſt the outward parts of your Horſe are hot or wet with ſweat, as the ear-roots, the flankes, the necke, or under his chaps: but being dry, rubbe and feed him according to the goodneſſe of his

ſtomacke. Change of food begetteth a ſtomack, ſo doth the waſhing of the tongue or noſtrils with vinegar, wine and ſalt, or warm vrine. Stop not your horſes fore-feet with Cowes dung, til he be ſufficiently cold, and that the blood and humours which were diſperſed, be ſetled into their proper places. Looke well to his backe, that the ſaddle hurt not, to the girths that they gal not, and to his ſhooes, that they be large, faſt and eaſie.

Orde ing of hunting-h rſe. For the ordering of your Hunting-horſe, let him in the time of his reſt have al the quietneſs that may be, much Litter, much Meate, and much dreſſing: water ever by him, and leave him to ſleep as long as he pleaſeth. Keep him to dung rather ſoft then hard, and looke that it be wel coloured and bright, for darkneſſe ſhewes greaſe, and redneſſe inwa rd heating. Let exerciſes and marſhes of ſweet Mault after be his uſuall ſcourings, & let bread of clean beanes, or Beanes and Wheat equally mixt, be his beſt food, & Beans & Oats the moſt oadinary,

Ordering of running horſes For the ordering of your running-horſe, ſet him have no more meat then to ſuffice nature, drink once in foure and twenty hours, & dreſſing every day once at noone onely. Let him have much moderate exerciſe, as morning and evening ayrings, or the fetching of his Water, and know no violence but in his courſes onely. Let him ſtand dark and warm, have many cloathes, and much Litter, being wheat ſtraw only. If he be very fat, ſcour oft: if of reaſonable ſtate ſcoure ſeldome: if leane, then ſcour but with a ſweet maſh onely. Be ſure your horſe be empty before he courſe and let his food be the fineſt, lighteſt and quickeſt of digeſtion that may be: the ſweats are more wholſome that are given abroad, and the cooling moſt natural which is given before he come into the ſtable. Keepe his limbes with coole ointments,

and

and by no means let any hot spices come in his body: if he grow dry inwardly, wash'n meat is very wholsome. If he grow loose, then give him straw in more abundance. Burning of sweet perfume in the stable is wholsome; & any thing you either do about your horse, or give unto your horse the more neat cleanly and sweet that it is, the better it nourisheth.

Ordering of Coach-horses.

For ordering the Coach-horse, let him have good dressing twice a day, Hay and Provender his belly full and Litter enough to tumble on, and he cannot chuse but prosper. Let him be walk'd and washt after travaile, for by reason of their many occasions to stand still they must be inur'd to all hardnesse, though it be much unwholsome. Their best food is sweet Hay, and wel dried Beanes and Oates, or Beane-bred: Looke well to the strength of their shooes, and the galling of their harnes's. Keepe their legges cleane, especially about the hinder, fetlocks, and when they are in the house, let them stand warmly cloathed.

Ordering of the Pack and Cart-horse.

For the ordering of the Pack-horse, or the Cart-horse they need no washing, walking or hours of fasting; only dresse them well, look to their shooes and backes, and then fill their bellies, and they will do their labour. Their best food is sweet Hay, Chaffe, or Pease or oathuls and Pease, or chopt straw, and Peate mixt together once a weeke to give them warme Graines and Salt is not amisse, for their Labour will prevent the breeding of worms, or such like mischiefs.

For the preservation of all Horses.

Now for the generall preservation of horses health, it is good whilst a horse is in youth & strength, to let him blood twice in the year, that is, beginning of the Spring and beginning of the Fal, when you may best afford him 3 weeks rest. After you have let him blood two daies af-

ter

ter give him a comfortable drench, as two ſpoonfuls of *Diapente*, or ſuch like, which is called *horſe Methridate* in a quart of ſtrong Ale. Uſe oft to perfume his Head with Frankincenſe, & in the heat of Summer uſe oft to ſwimme him. Let a fat Horſe drink oft, and a little at once, and a lean Horſe whenſoever he hath appetite. Much rubing is comfortable, and cheereth every member. Be ſure to let your Horſe eat graſſe once in a yeer, for that cooleth the bloud, ſcours away groſſe humors, & gives great ſtrength and nouriſhment to the Body. If notwithſtanding all theſe principles, your Horſe fall into ſickneſſe and diſeaſe, then looke into the Chapters following, and you ſhal find the trueſt, beſt approved, and the moſt familiar medicines for all manner of infirmities, that ever were knowne or publiſhed, except my Maſter-piece.

## CHAP. 2.

*Of riding in general, and of the particular knowledges belonging to the Art of riding of a great Horſe, or Horſe for ſervice or pleaſure.*

HAving ſpoken ſomthing already of horſes, it now followes we ſay ſomething of the commendable exerciſe of riding great horſes, which in the very action it ſelf ſpeaketh Gentlemen to all that are performers or doers of the ſame. And though our Engliſh Gentry from a ſloath in their induſtry, aym for the moſt part at no more skil, then the riding of a ridden and perfect Horſe, which is but only the ſetting forth of another mans vertue, and thereby making themſelves richer in diſcourſe then action: yet our Engliſh Husbandman, or good man, whom I ſeek to make exact and perfect in

all

all things, shal not onely recreate himself by riding the horses whom the other men have made perfect, but shal by his own practise bring his horse from utter ignorance to the best skill that can be desired in his motions wherein he shall find a twofold pleasure, the one, an excellent contentment to his mind, that he can perform so worthy an action, without the chargeable assistance of others, and the other a healthfull support to his body, when by such recreation his spirits & inward faculties are revived and inflamed. The pleasure of Riding.

But now me thinks, I hear some say, that I have utterly taken away the tune of this string, I have stricken so oft upon it, and that indeed there can be no delight where there is no variation: and that surely I cannot vary any more upon this plaine song, but the World, will find discord either in this, or my former descants. But let them not deceive themselves for my building standeth on a firm rock, and I know both shal be worthily justifiable: onely this I must informe all men, that in times past long since when our first rules of Horsemanship were given unto us, our Masters were not so kill full in the abilities of horses performances as we are, but measured them by the proportions of their own weaker natures, and thence became so too much tender over them, that they neither respected the greatnesse of their owne labours, nor the length of time before they assumed to their desires, so in the end they might aspire to their wishes with safety and full satisfaction: whence it came to pass that in those times, & even now in these chiefly amongst those which are meerely riders, and no Keepers there is no lesse time allowed to the making up of a perfect horse, then two yeares, when we know, and my self from experience can justifie the same that if the The Riders Apology.

Rider

Rider can keepe as wel as Ride, that is, give as well directions for the preſervation of a horſes health, and the avoidance of Sorrances and ſickneſs, as put in practiſe artfully every violence to be uſed in his Leſſons, he may very well make up a perfect horſe in three moneths, fit either for pleaſure or battaile, which is the ful ſcope & end of this Treatiſe: wherein I would not have any man expect either new Rules, or contradiction of any already ſet down by men of practiſe and knowledge in the Art, but onely a ſtraightning or drawing of them together into a much narrower compaſs, giving ſatisfaction to our deſires and finiſhing up our worke with ſpeed, which before was almoſt loſt or neglected, with the length of our labours, as you ſhall full yperceive by this diſcourſe which followeth.

The taming of young Colt.

Firſt then to ſpeak of the taming of a yong colt, which is as it were the preface or introduction to the art of riding, you ſhall after he hath beene in the houſe a week or a fortnight, and is familiar with the man and will withal patiently indure currying, Combing, Rubbing, clawing and handling in every part and member of his body, without any ſhew of rebellion or knaviſhneſſe, which you ſhal compaſſe by all gentle and eaſie means doing nothing about him ſuddainly or raſhly, but with leiſure and moderation: then you ſhall offer him a ſaddle, which you ſhal ſet in the manger before him, that he may ſmel to it & looke upon it, & you ſhal gingle the girths and ſtirrops about his ears, to make him careleſſe of the noiſe, then withal gentleneſſe, after you have rub'd his ſides therewithal, you ſhal ſet it on his back,

His ſadling & bridling,

and gird it gently on, and then place his Crooper with al eaſe; which done, you ſhal take a ſweet watering trench, waſht, and annoynted with honey and ſalt

and

and put it into his mouth, placing it to hang directly about his tuſh, and as it were a litle leaning thereupon: this you ſhall doe in the morning as ſoon as you have dreſt him, and then thus ſadled and bridled, you ſhall lead him forth, and water him in your hand abroad: then bringing him in, and after he hath ſtood a little reined upon his trench an hour or more, take away the bridle and ſaddle, and let him go to his meat till the Evening: then lead him forth (as before) with the ſaddle to the water, then when he is ſet up, gently take off his ſaddle, and cheriſh him, and then dreſſe him, and cloath him up for all night.

The next day ſaddle and bridle him as before ſaid, & put on him a ſtrong mufrole of writhen Iron, or a ſharp Cavezan & Martingal, which you ſhall buckle at ſuch length that he may no more but feel it when he jnrketh up his head, and then lead him forth into ſome new plowed field, or ſoft ground, and there, after you have made him trot a good ſpace about you in your hand, & thereby taken away from him all his wantonneſſe, and knaviſh diſtractions, you ſhal offer your foot to the ſtirrop, at which if he ſhew any diſtaſte, either in body or countenance, you ſhall then courſe him about again: then offer again, and with leiſure riſe half way up, and go down again: at which if he ſhrink, correct him as before, but if he take it patiently, then cheriſh him, and ſo mount into the Saddle, which done, after cheriſhing, light downe againe, and give him bread or graſſe to eate: then looke that your girths be wel gi'ted and ſtreight: that the crooper be ſtrong & of juſt length, that the bridle hang even, & in his due place without inward or outward offence, that your ſtirrops be fit and generally al things without offence either to your

The firſt backſug.

your ſelf or to the baeſt, & then as before, mount his back, ſeat your ſelf juſt and even in the ſaddle, make the reynes of your bridle of equal length, carry your rod without offence to his eye in your right hand, the point either directly upright, or thwarted toward your left ſhoulder: Then having cheriſht him; let the Groom which before led him, having his hand on the chaff halter, lead him forward a dozen or twenty paces, then gently ſtrayning your hand, with the help of the footman make him ſtand ſtill, then cheriſh him, and leade him forward again, and do this five or ſix times one after another, till by continuall uſe you make him of your own accord (without the footmans help) by giving your body, and thruſting your legs forward, goe forward, which as ſoon as he doth, you ſhall ſtay him, and cheriſh him, and then ſitting on his backe, let your footman lead him home, and bring him to the blocke, where after you have cheriſht him, you ſhall gently alight, & cauſe him to be led up, & wel-dreſt & meated. The next day you ſhal bring him forth as before, and in all points, take his back as aforeſaid, & ſo by the help of the footman trot him fore-right half a mile at leaſt; then let the footman lay off his hand, & walk by him, till you have of your ſelfe trotted him forth another half mile, then cheriſh him, and make the footman give him ſome graſſe or bread to eat, & then taking a large compaſſe, trot him home, and bring him to the *block* as before, and there alight, and ſo ſet him up.

The 3d. day let your footman light upon ſome ſpare Jade, & then bringing your Colt to the *block*, take his back gently, and after you have cheriſht him, the other riding before you, follow him forth-right a mile, ever & anone at the end of twenty or thirty ſcore, ſtopping the

the Colt gently, cherifhing him, and making him yeeld and go back a ſtep or two, & then putting him forward again, till he be ſo perfect, that with the leaſt motion he will go forward, ſtop, and retire, which will be effected in two days more: in which ſpace, if he chance at any time to ſtrike or rebel, you ſhall make him which rides before you take the ſpare reyn, and lead him forward, whileſt you give him two or three good laſhes under the belly, & then being in his way, take the ſpare reyn to your ſelt again: and thus you ſhal doe, till all faults be amended: then you ſhall ſpare your horſeman, or guide, and only by your ſelfe for three or four dayes more trot him every morning and afternoone, at leaſt a mile or two forward, uſing him only to ſtop and retire, and bringing him home a contrary way to that you went forth, till he be ſo perfect and willing, tha he will take his way how or in what manner your ſel pleaſeth, ever obſerving to mount and diſmount at the blocke only, except ſome ſpecial occaſion conſtraine you to the contrary.

This you may very well bring to paſſe the firſt week of the Horſes riding.

As ſoone as you ſee your Horſe wil receive you to his backe, trot forth-right, ſtop and retire, and doe all this with great patience and obedience, you ſhal then call into your mind the three maine points of a Horſemans knowledge, which are helpes, corrections, and cheriſhings: and for helpes, they conſiſt in theſe: Firſt, the voyce, which ſounding ſharply and cheerfully, cry ing *Wa, ho, hey*, and ſuch like, adde a ſpirit and livelineſſe to the Horſe, and lend a great helpe to all his motions: then the bridle, which reſtrained, or at liberty, helpes him how to do, and ſhewes which way to do. The three main points of a horſemans skill.

Then

then the Rod which being onely ſhewed, is a help to direct being only moved, helpes the quickneſſe and nimbleneſſe of the motion; and being gently toucht withal, helpes the lofttineſſe of a horſes ſalts and leaps, and makes him as it were gather all his ſtrength into on point; and laſtly, the calves of the Legges, ſtirrop leathers, and ſtirrops, which moved by the horſes ſide, helpes him to nimbleneſſe, ſwiftneſſe, and readineſſe in turning. Some to theſe helpes adde the helpe of the Spur, chiefly in high ſalts or boundings, but it muſt be done in a juſt and true time and with ſuch gentle bitterneſſe that the horſe may underſtand it for a help or elſe he will take diſtaſt, and finding it ſavour like correction, in ſtead of bettering his doings, do with more diſorder, as to ſpraule with his foreſeet in advancing, to yerk out with one or both his hinder ſeet in the corveit or bounding, ſhaking of his head, and ſuch like, as will appear in practiſe.

Of Corrections and which they be, Now of Corrections the moſt principle is the Spur, which muſt not at any time be given triflingly, or itchingly, but ſoundly and ſharply, as oft as juſt occaſion ſhall require: then the Rod, which upon diſorder ſloth, or miſcarriage of the members, muſt be given alſo ſoundly then the voice which being delivered ſharply and roughly, as *ha villaine*, *carro*, *diabla*, and ſuch like threatnings, terrifies the horſe, and maketh him afraid to diſobey: and laſtly the bridle, which now and then ſtricken with a hard choke in his mouth, reformeth many vices and diſtemperatures of his head: yet this laſt muſt be done ſeldome, and with great diſcretion, for to mrke a cuſtome thereof, is the ready way to ſpoile a horſes mouth.

Of cheriſhing Now of cheriſhings there are generally in uſe but three

three, as firſt the voice, which being delivered ſmoothly and lovingly, as crying *holla, ſo boy, thereboy there*, & ſuch like, gives the horſe both a cheerfulneſſe of ſpirit, & a knowledge that he hath done well: then the hand, by clapping him gently on the neck or buttock, or giving him graſſe or other food, to eat after he hath pleaſed you: and laſtly, the bigge end of the Rod, by rubbing him therewith upon the withers or maine, which is very pleaſing and delightfull to the horſe.

Now after theſe ordinary and actuall helps, corrections and cheriſhings, you ſhall have reſpect to the Muſrole, or Cavezan and Martingale, which carry in them all the three former both ſeverall and unite; for it is firſt an eſpecial help and guide to every wel-diſpoſed horſe, for ſeting of his head in a true place forming of his Reine, and making him appear comely and gallant in the eyes of the beholders; then it is a ſharp correction when a horſe yerketh out his noſe, or diſordereth his head any way, or ſtriveth to plunge or runne away with his Rider: And laſtly, it is a great cheriſhing unto the Beaſt, when he yeeldeth his head to your hand, by ſhrinking from his face, and ſo leaving any more to torment him, but when he offendeth: whence it comes that more from this then any thing elſe, the Horſe firſt gaineth the knowledge of his Maſters will, and is deſirous to perform it: therefore you ſhal be very carefull to the placing of this upon the Horſe; as firſt, that it hang ſome-what low, and reſt upon the tender Griſſell of the Horſes noſe, whereby the correction may be the ſharper when occaſion requires it; then that it be looſe and not ſtraight whereby the horſe may feele upon the yeelding in of his head, how the offence goeth from him, and ſo know that onely his owne diſorder is

Of the Muſrole and Martingale.

his own punishment. Lastly he shal be careful to note how he winneth the Horses Head, and by those degrees to draw his Martingale straiter and straiter, so as the Horse may ever have a gentle feeling of the same, and no more, till his Head and Reine be brought to that perfection that you desire, and then there to stay, and keepe the Martingale constantly in that place only, which your shal performe in those few days which you trot your Horse forth-right, being before you bring him to any Lesson, more then the knowledge of your self, and how to receive you to his backe, and trot forth obediently with you.

Of treading the large-ring

When your Horse is brought unto some certainty of Rein, will trot forth-right with you at your pleasure, & by your former exercise therein is brought to breath & delight in his travel, *which will grow and encrease upon him, as you grow and increase in your labour*, then you shal bring him to the treading forth of the large Rings in this manner: *First, if he be of heavy and sluggish nature, sloathfull and dull, and albeit he have strength and sufficiency of body, yet you find him slovenly and unapt, then you shall trot him into some new plowed field, soft and deepe: But if he be of quicke and of fiery spirit, apt, nimble, and ready to learn, then you shall trot him into some sandy or gravelly place, where is strong and firme foothold, and there you shall marke out a spacious large Ring, at least threescore or fourescore paces in compasse*, and having walked him sixe or seven times about the same on your right hand, you shal then by a little straining of your right Reine, and laying the calfe of your left Legge to his side, make a halfe circle within your Ring upon your right hand, downe to the center or mid-point thereof, and then by straining your

Choice of ground.

left

left Reine a little, and laying the calfe of your right leg to his side, making another half circle to your left hand from the center to the outmost Verge, with two halfe circles contrary turned, will make a perfect Roman S. within the Ring; then keeping your first large circumference, walke your horse about on your left hand, as oft as you did on your Right, and then change within your Ring as you did before to your right hand again, & then trot him first on the right hand, then on the left, so long as you shall think convenient. And although our ancient Masters in this *Art* have prescribed unto us certain numbers of Ring-turnes, and how oft it is meet to goe about on either hand, as if all horses were of one even ability, yet I would wish you to neglect those Rules, & only to practise your horse in this Lesson, according to his strength of his body, somtimes applying him therin an hour, somtimes two. & somtimes three, more or lesse according to your discretion: for the space of time can neither bring wearinesse nor tiring: and for your change of hands, you shal do it as oft as shal seem best to your self, being ever very carefull to give him the most exercise and that hand, on which he is ever most unwillingest to go: and in this lesson be careful also that he do it cheerfully, lustily, nimbly, quickning and inflaming his spirits by all the means possible, and when you find that he wil trot his large rings perfectly, which wil questionles be in lesse then a weeks space, being wel applied therein, for you must not foreslow any morning except the Sabboth day, hardly any after-noone: also if you find him sloathful and heavy, for there is no greater hinderance then the Riders too much tendernes, nor no greater furtherance then a continual moderate exercise therefore as I said, when he will trot his Rings wel, then

Of ga'loping large Rings.

in the ſame manner, & with the ſame changes, you ſhal make him gallop the ſame Rings, which he ſhal do alſo with great dexterity, lightneſſe, and much nimbleneſſe, without loſing the leaſt part or grace of his beſt reign, nay ſo carefull you ſhalbee thereof, that in his gallopping, you ſhall, as it were gather his body together, & make his Reine rather better then it was, and make him take up his feet ſo truly and loftily, that not any eie may ſee or perceive a fallhood in his ſtroke, but that his inward feet play before his outward, & each of a ſide follow the other ſo directly, that his gallop may appear as the beſt grace of all his motions: neither ſhall you enter him into this leſſon rathly & haſtily, but ſoberly & with diſcretion, making him firſt gallop a quarter of the ring, then half, then three parts, and laſtly the whole Ring: neither ſhal you force him in to his galop with violence or the ſharpneſs of ſpurs, but with ſpirit & mettal, making him by the lightnes and cheerfulnes of your own body, paſſe of his own accord into his gallop, and eſpecially in his changes, where you may let him feel your Leg, and ſhew him your rod on the contrary ſide: and herein is to be noted, that continually thoſe changes (in as much as they are made in a much ſtraiter compaſſe) muſt be done ever with great quickneſſe, and more ſtirring nimbleneſſe then intire Leſſon.

He'pes in the large-ring turnes,

Now for the helps neceſſary in theſe large ring-turns, they conſiſt generally in the *Voice*, *Rod*, *Calves* of your Legs, and the *Bridle*; in the *voice* by quickning him up, and reviving his ſpirits when he growes ſlothful, with theſe words, *How*, *hey*, or *via*: In the *Rod*, by ſhewing it him on the contrary ſide, or laying it on the contrary ſhoulder, and ſometimes by ſhaking it over his Head, (which is a kind of threatning) chiefly when you make your

your changes. In the calves of your legs, when you clap them hard to the contrary ſide, to which he turneth, or by ſpringing and jerking your legs forward, hard upon your ſtirrop-leathers, which wil quicken him, and make him gather up his limbes better than the ſpur by many degrees: and laſtly in the *Bridle*, by drawing it in a little ſtraiter, and holding it with ſome more conſtancy when you put any of your former helpes in uſe, or doe any thing with more life or courage, for that maketh him draw his limbes together, and to ſtraiten his rings with gracely comelineſſe.

For the corrections in theſe large rings they be di- corrections in the ring-turne
vers, as namely, the Bridle, the Spur, and the Rod, and ſometimes the *voice*, yet that but ſeldome: for the bridle: you ſhal correct your horſe therwith if he carry head or chaps awry, make as it were mowes and ill-favoured countenances, giving him now and then a little checke in the mouth, and awakning him from ſuch forgetful paſſions, or now and then drawing the trench to and fro in his mouth, which wil reform the errour then the ſpur which muſt be laid ſharp and hard to his ſides when you find your helpes wil do no good, but that his ſloth rather more and more increaſeth, or when hee preſſeth and hangeth hard upon your hand, or looſeth the touch of his reine, or ſuch like: *vices*: for the rod, when you find that hee neglecteth the ſhewing or ſhaking of it, or when he diſordeth any of his hinder parts and wil not gather them up comely together, then you ſhal therewith give him a ſound laſh or two under the belly, or over the contrary ſhoulder, and to any of theſe former corections, you ſhal ever accompany the threatning of your voice, when the fault is to much foule, and no otherwiſe, becauſe there ſhould be ever an entire love

betwixt the horſe and the Horſe-man which continuall chiding wil either take away, or at leaſt root out the apprehenſion thereof.

Cheriſhing in the ring ſur nes.

Now for your cheriſhings, they are thoſe which I formerly ſpake of; only they muſt be uſed at no time but when your horſe doth wel, & hath pleaſed your mind, both with his cunning & tractablenes: & although the time for the ſame be when he hath finiſh'd his leſſons, yet there is a ſecret pleaſing & cheriſhing of a horſe with the bridle, which muſt be exerciſed in the doing of his leſſons, & that is the ſweetning of his mouth by a little, ceaſing of your bridle hand, & gently drawing it up back again, letting it come & go with ſuch an unperceiving motion that none but the beaſt may know it.

Of ſtopping and giving back.

When your horſe can trot & gallop theſe large rings with all perfectneſſe, which with good induſtry wil be perfected in leſſe then a fortnights exerciſe, you ſhall then proceed to make him ſtop fair, comely, and without danger, which you ſhall doe in this manner: Firſt as ſoone as you have taken his back, cheriſh him, put him gently forward and bring him into a ſwift trot; after you have trotted him forty or threeſcore yards forward, you ſhal by drawing in your bridle-hand ſtraitly and ſuddenly make him gather his hinder legs, and forelegs together, and ſo in an inſtant ſtand ſtill, which as ſoone as he doth immediatly, you ſhal eaſe your hand a little, yet not ſo much as may give him liberty to preſs forward, but rather to yeeld back-ward, which if you find he doth, you ſhall give him more liberty and cheriſh him, and then having pauſed a while, draw in your bridle-hand, and make him go back two, or three, paces, at which if he ſtick inſtantly, eaſe your hand, and draw it up againe, letting it come and go till he yeeld

and

and go back-ward, which (for the moſt part) all horſes as the firſt wil doe: but if it be that your horſe rebell and wil not go back with this gentle admonition, you ſhal then cauſe a foot-man ſtanding by to put him back with his hand, and in his motion you ſhal cherith him, that he may underſtand what your wil is: & thus every time you make him ſtop, you ſhal make him retire til in on ſpace of time you have made both leſſons perfect, and this practice you ſhal uſe both til you come to your large rings and at every time that you finiſh your leſſon, or give the horſe breath or eaſe: whereby you ſhal perceive that your horſe ſhal learn to trot and gallop the large rings, to ſtop and retire back all in one ſpace of time, becauſe you ſee ſucceſſively the tone another, & are to be done (though three) but as on entire leſſon.

*Now for the helps in theſe leſſons, the beſt for ſtopping is the choice of ground as by making your horſe ever to ſtop him downe the ſloape of ſome hill, or diſcending ground, whereby he may be compell'd to couch his hinder loines the better, and ſo make him ſtop moſt comely, and to obſerve that the ground be firm and hard, without danger of ſliding, leſt the horſe finding ſuch an imperfection grow fearefull and ſo refuſe to do your will out of his own danger.* Helpes.

*In retiring you ſhall help him with your rod, by putting it before his breaſt, or ſhaking it before his knees, to make him remove his feet more quick and nimbly.*

For corrections in ſtopping, it muſt ſometimes be done by your ſelf, as with the even ſtroke of your ſpurs when in this ſtop he diſordereth his head, or with any one ſingle ſpurre, when he caſteth out his hinder loines, and wil not ſtop right in an even line, and ſometimes it Correction

muſt be done by another by-ſtander, where he refuſeth to ſtop at all, who ſtanding at the place or ſtop, as ſoon as you draw up your hand, ſhal with his rod threaten the horſe, and make him not dare to preſs forward, or if he do preſſe forward, to make him retire ſwiftly back ſo much ground as he gained, both your ſelfe and the by ſtander, rating him with your voices extreamly: for corections in retiring they are the even ſtrokes of both your ſpurs, when he ſticks or preſſes upon your hand, and wil not yeeld back, and alſo your rod ſtruck ſharply upon his knees and breaſts, and the rod of a by-ſtander ſtruck upon his breaſt, knees and face when his ſtubbornneſſe is too violent.

Cheriſhings. But for his cheriſhings they be all formerly ſpoke of when your wil is comely and obediently performed, beſides the addition of ſome other as a preſent eaſing of your bridle hand, and the chapping and cheriſhing of the by-ſtander, and ſo offering him to ſtand and recover breath a good ſpace after.

Of advancing before. When your horſe can ſtop and retire wel which may be done in the ſame ſpace that you teach him his large ring-turns, for it is as itwere three leſſons learn'd in one, you ſhal then teach him to advance before when hee ſtoppeth, which is very comly and gracefull to the beholders; and you ſhal do it in this manner: After you have ſtopped your horſe, without giving your hand any eaſe, you ſhal lay the calves of both your legs hard to his ſides, and add thereto the noiſe of the ſhaking of your rod, and your voice by crying *up, up*, which wil at firſt (peradventure) but a little amaze him, becauſe he underſtandeth not your meaning: Therefore you ſhall put him forward again, and doe as before and that with a little more ſtrength continuing, the practice of the

the ſame till you perceive he taketh one foot from the earth, then cheriſh him a little, and ſo to the leſſons again, till he taketh up both his legs from the ground, which when he doth orderly or diſorderly, yet cheriſh him exceedingly, that he may come to the knowledge of your meaning without which all your labour is loſt; then to your former practice again, till you have brought him to that perfectneſſe, that he wil with all readineſſe advance as oft as you wil give him the calvs of your legs to his ſides, be it leſſe or more times together: this done you ſhal looke to the order and comelineſſe of his advancing: as firſt that hee takes up his legs both even together, and wind them inwards towards his body; then that he advance not to high (for feare of comming over upon you) but couch his hinder loins cloſe to the ground: then that he ſprauleth not, nor paweth with his feet forward: and laſtly that he advance not for his own pleaſure, but when you command him by your own direct and orderly motions, for the contrary is a foul fault in Horſemanſhip.

For helps in this leſſon, they are the calves of your legs the ſhaking of your rod over his head, and your voice, as is before ſaid, and the deſcent of ſome hanging ground, which wil make his hinder loins couch the better. Helpes.

The corrections are according to the nature of offences as the even ſtroke of your Spurs, or a good laſh with your rod, when you ſee he fixeth his feet to the ground and ſtubbornely applies himſelfe to diſobey you, or will take up his feete one after another, and not both together. If hee doe advance too high ſo as he is ready to come over upon you, or if he ſpraule or paw forth with his feete, you ſhall then not onely give him both your ſpurs hard together, but alſo a good jerke Corrections.

or

or two with your rod between his ears: but if he advance when you would not have him, you shal then in the same instant jerk him over both the knees with your rod; and if he advance again, jerk him again, not ceasing til he fixe his feeet to the ground or go backward, and then cherish him.

Cherishings. For perticular cherishings in this Lesson, they are no other then those for meer spoke of, onely they must be done with a more ready watchfulnesse, in the very instant and moment of a time in which he performeth any thing wel, that the Horse may understand why, & wherefore he receiveth such contentment, & thereby be incouraged to continue in his goodnes, & be more ready to apprehend his Riders pleasure.

The use of advancing. For the use of advancing, it is two-fold: as namely, to give a grace to his other lessons, & to bring his body to nimblenes: yet for the most part, it is onely used at the stop, where when you have finish'd any lesson, if then concluding with the stop you make him advance, once, twice, or thrice, it wil be both a grace to the beast, and shew much art in the Horse-man; also it maketh a horse apt & ready to turn wel, & maketh him trust to his hinder legs, whereby his fore-parts may be directed, & governed at the horse mans pleasure.

Of yerking behind. Next to advancing, you shall teach your Horse to yerk behind in this manner: When at any time you have made him stop, you shal presently with your rod give him a good jerk under his belly, neer to his flanck which though at the first he apprehend not, yet by a continual and constant use thereof, you shal in the end bring him to yerk out his hinder legs; at the first doing whereof, you shal cherish him, for that is the only language by which he knowes he doth your wil and then having

having pauſed a little make him do it again, increaſing it every day, and doubling his doings, til he be ſo ready, that when you pleaſe to give the jerke, he wil then give the yerk, aud then you ſhal look to the comelineſſe of his doings, that is to ſay, that he yerk not out his hinder legs, til his fore legs be above the ground, then that he yerk not one leg farther out then the other, but both even together, then that he yerke not too high, and laſtly, that he yerke not one leg out whilſt the other is on the ground, all which are errours of great groſneſs. Therfore to make the horſe more perfect in this leſſon it ſhal be good to teach him to yerk out behind, when he ſtandeth in the ſtable by jerking him on the buttocks with your rod, and not ceaſing to moleſt him till he raiſe his rump above the ground, and then to cheriſh him, and ſo to apply him without any eaſe and reſt, till he do your wil; then when he is perfect to put the ſame in practice when you are in the field on his back, by turning your rod in your hand to his buttock-ward, and touching him therewith, to make him yerk as aforeſaid.

For the helps, they are the conſtant ſtaying his mouth on the bridle, the ſtroke of your rod under his belly, or the gentle touching him upon the rump with the ſame. Helpes.

The corrections are onely the even ſtroke of your Spurs, when either he refuſeth to yerke, or yerketh out diſorderly, & out of malice; or the ſingle Spur, on that ſide on which he yerketh out moſt diſorderly: and laſtly, a reſtleſſe holding of him to the leſſon, not giving him any reſt or eaſe, till he do it in that manner which you can wiſh. Corrections.

Then for his cheriſhings, they are all thoſe formerly mentioned Cheriſhings. 1

mentioned, being beſtowed upon him in the very inſtant of his wel-doing.

When your horſe is perfect in all the leſſons formerly ſpoke of, and underſtandeth the helpes and corrections belonging to the ſame, you ſhal then teach him to turn readily on both hands, by ſtraitning his large rings, and bringing them into a much leſſe compaſſe: and although amongſt Horſe-men, and in the Art of Horſeman-ſhip there are divers and ſundry turnes, ſome high and lofty as the turne upon the *Corvet*, *Capriole*, or on bounds, ſome cloſe and neer the ground, as the tune *Tarra*, *Tarra*, or theſe wee call *Caralogo*, *Serpeigiare*, and ſuch like, and ſome ſwift and flying as the *Incavalare*, *Chambetta*, and ſuch like: yet ſith they all labour but to one end, which is to bring an horſe to an exact ſwiftneſſe and readineſſe in turning, I will in as brief and plain manner as I can ſhew you how to compaſs the ſame. Firſt, therfore you ſhal make out a ring ſome three or foure yards in compaſſe, and in the ſame with all gentleneſſe a while walk your horſe. ſuffering him to go the ſame at his own pleaſure, gathering his head up by a little and little, & making him take pleaſure in the ſame, till you find that he taketh knowledge of the Ring, and wil with all willingneſſe make about the ſame, coveting rather to ſtraiten it, than enlarge it, which perceived you ſhall then carry your bridle hand conſtant & ſomwhat ſtrait yet the outmoſt reyne ever ſome what more ſtrait than the inmoſt, making the horſe rather look from the ring than into the ring and the calve of your leg (as occaſion ſhal ſerve) ſomewhat neer to the outward part of the horſe, & then you ſhal trot him about the ring, firſt on the one ſide and then on the other, making your changes within that ſtrait ring, as you did before within the large ring.

or

And in this sort without ceasing, you shal exercise your Horse a full hour together, then stop him, make him advance twice or thrice together, then retire in an even Line, and so stand stil a pritty while, and cherish him, then when he hath taken fresh breath, to him agayne, and do as before, continually labouring by raising up your bridle hand, and thrusting forward your Legs, and body, to bring his trot to all the swiftnes, and lostines that may be, and in your changes to do them so readily, and roundly as may be also, making him to lap his outmost leg so much over his inmost leg, that he may cover it more then a foot over, and thus you shal exercise him a whole forenoon at least a week together, only doing his former lessons but once over in a morning, & no more, and in this practise you teach him perfectly three lessons together, that is, the turne *Terra, Terra*, the *Incavalare*, and the *Chambetta*, the turn *Terra, Terra*, in the outmost circle of the strait Ring, and the *Incavalare* and *Chambetta* in the changes, wherein he is forc't to lap one Leg over another, or else to lift up the inmost leg from the ground while he brings the outmost over it: and surely in this Ring, and these changes, consisteth all the main Art of turning, and the chiefest glory both of the horse and the horse-man: & therefore it is meet for every Rider to think this lesson never perfectly learnt, and therefore continually to practise his horse in the same, making him not only tread and trot these narrow rings, but also galop them, and from galoping them, to passe them about in ground salts, as by taking up his fore legs from the ground both together, and bringing his hinder feet into their place, and so passing the Ring about once, or twice, or thrice, at your pleasure, or as oft as the horses strength & courage wil alow: & this is the

true

true turn, called *Terrra, Terra,* and of greateſt requeſt with Horſe-men, and likewiſe with Souldiers; and this *will every horſe naturally and eaſily be brought unto, onely by a continuall trotting and galloping of theſe narrow rings. Thus you ſee the perfectneſſe of your large rings brings your horſe to an eaſie uſe of the ſtrait rings; and the eaſie knowledge of the ſtrait rings brings a horſe to the perfection of turning, which is the ground and maine ſum of this Art, as ſtopping begets retiring, and retiring advancing. Thus every leſſon as it were a chaine is linckt one to another.*

Helpes. The helps belonging to turning, are all whatſoever are formerly ſpoken of, becauſe it is a Leſſon *which beſides that it containeth in it ſelfe all other leſſons, ſo it muſt be done with more courage, Art, and nimbleneſſe, then any elſe whatſoever;* and therefore the Horſe had need of all the aſſiſtance that can poſſibly be given him.

Corrections. The corrections are the ſpurs given on the outmoſt ſide, when the Horſe ſtickes, and is harder to come about on the one ſide, then on the other; and the Rod ſtricken hard on the outmoſt ſide of the offending member, as alſo a continuall labour, when the Horſe ſhews either unwilingneſſe or diſobedience: touching the unnimbleneſſe of his turning when he bears one Legge againſt another, or treads one foot upon another, the raps and hurts he doth himſelf are ſufficient corrections, & wil both make him know his fault, and amend it.

Cheriſhings. For his cheriſhings, they are alſo the former already ſpoke of, *yet to be uſed (if poſſible) with greater earneſtneſſe, in as much as this Leſſon being moſt cunning, would for the performance thereof ever receive the moſt comfort.*

Your Horſe being brought to this perfection, that he wil

wil perfectly tread his large rings, ſtop, retire, advance before, yerk behind and turn readily on either hand, you ſhal then take away his muſrole and trench, and in ſtead thereof put upon his head a gentle Cavezan or two joynts, and three peeces, with a chap-band underneath, which you ſhal buckle cloſe, but not ſtrait, and be ſure that the cavezan lie upon the tender griſſel of the horſes noſe, ſome-what neer to the upper part of his noſtrils, then to the chap-band you ſhal faſten the Martingale, and laſtly to the rings on each ſide the Cavezan you ſhal faſten long divided reines, more then a yard and a halfe in length a peece, then into his mouth you ſhal put a ſweet ſmooth cannon bit, with a plain watering chaine, the cheek being of large ſize, ſo as it may arme a little above the point of his ſhoulder; and the kurble ſhal be thick, round & large, hanging looſely upon his nether lip, and intiſing the horſe with his lip to play with the ſame. Thus armed you ſhal take his back, and caſting the left reine of your cavezan over the horſes right ſhoulder, you ſhal bear it with your thumb, with the reines of the bit in your left hand; and the right reines of the cavezan you ſhal caſt over the horſes left ſhoulder, and bear it with your rod in your right hand, and ſo trot him forth the firſt morning out right a mile or two in the high way, making him only feele and grow acquainted with the bit, and onely making him now & then ſtop and retire, and gathering up his head into a due place, and faſhioning his reine with all the beauty and comelineſſe that may be, which done, the next day you ſhal bring him to his large rings, and as was before ſhewed, there make him perfect with the bit as you did with the ſnaffle firſt in trotting then in galloping of the ſame; then make him ſtop, retire advance, yerke behind,

and

and come upon their hand with a great deal more perfectneſſe, and more grace then was formerly done with the trench, which is an eaſie labour, in as much as the bit is of much better command, and brings more comelineſs to the horſes motions, is alſo a greater help, a ſharper correction, and a cheriſher of more comfort then any before uſed. And thus in the firſt moneth you may make any horſe perfect upon the trene in the leſſons before ſpoke of, ſo in the ſecond moneth you may make the ſame Leſſons a great deal more perfect upon the bit, & ſo preſume in too months to have a perfect ground horſe, fit either for Souldier or Schollar, that hath any good rules of Horſeman-ſhip in him.

Of the turning Poſt.

Now forasmuch as the *Art in turning* in horſes is of great difficulty, and ought of all Leſſons to be moſt elaborate, I will ſpeak a little further thereof, and ſhew you the practiſe of theſe preſent times, for the beſt accompliſhment of the ſame, without ſtirring vp evil motions in the Horſe, whence Reſtiveneſſe, and other vild errours do grow; for it is certain that every Horſe naturally deſireth neither offence, nor to offend, but the rash direction of ignorant Horſe-men, which wil compell a Horſe to do, before he know what, or how to do, is the begetting of thoſe evils which are hardly or ever Reclaimed: for a horſe is like an ill brought vp boy, who having learnt drunkenneſſe in his youth, will hardly be ſober in his age, and having once got a knaviſh quality, though he be never ſo much puniſhed for the ſame, will yet now and then ſhew that the remembrance is not utterly extinguiſhed, and forasmuch as in this Leſſon of ſtrait turnes, there is ſo much curious hardneſſe that a Horſe is moſt ſubject to Rebel, and learne many evils thereby, therefore to prevent all thoſe evils, you

ſhall

ſhal cauſe a ſmooth ſtrong poſt to be wel ram'd & fixed in the earth in the midſt of the ſtrait ring, at the very point & center thereof; then cauſing a foot-man to ſtand at the poſt, you ſhal give him the right reine of your cavezan which you ſhal make him hold about the poſt, & ſo walk or trot your horſe about the ſame on your right hand as long as you pleaſe; then taking up the right rein, give him the left rein, & do as much upon the left hand, & thus change from hand to hand, as oft as you ſhal think convenient, til you have brought your horſe to the abſolute perfection of every turne, the poſt being ſuch a guide and bond unto the horſe, that albeit the horſe men were of himſelf utterly ignorant, yet it is impoſſible the horſe ſhould either diſorder or diſobey the Riders purpoſe.

When your horſe can thus perfectly ſet every ſeverall turne either ſtrait or open with his bit, you ſhal then teach him to manage, which is the onely poſture for the uſe of the ſword on horſe-back, and you ſhal doe it in this manner: Firſt, cauſe ſome by-ſtander to pricke up in the earth two riping Rods, about twenty or forty yards or more, as you thinke good, diſtant one from the other; then walke your horſe in a ſtraight turne or Ring about, the firſt on your right hand, and ſo paſſing him in an even furrow downe to the other Rod, walke about it alſo in a narrow Ring on your left hand, then thruſt him into a gentle gallop downe the even furrow, till you come to the firſt Rod, and there making him, as it were ſtop & advance without any pauſe or intermiſſion of time, hruſt him forward againe, and beate the turne *Terra*, *Terra*, about it on your right hand, then gallop forth right to the other Rod, and in the ſame manner beate the turne about on your left hand: and thus doe as Of managing

oft as you shal think it convenient for your own practice and the horses strength.

Diverſities of manages.

Now of these manages our ancient masters in horsemanship have made divers kinds, as manage with rest, and manage without rest, manage with single turnes, and manage with double turnes, which indeede doth rather breed confusion, than understanding in either the horse or horseman: therfore for your better knowledge, I will reduce them onely but to two kinds: that is, manage open, and manage close: your open manage is that which I shewed you before, when you turne *Terra, Terra*, which is the most open of all strait turns: and your close manage is when you turne upon the *incavalare*, or *Chambetta*, which are the closest of al turns & may be done as before I shewed in a flying manner, even upon one foot, which although it be artful, yet it is not so glorious and safe for the Souldiers practise, onely this you may be most assured of, that when a Horse can manage upon both these turnes, he may manage without more instruction, upon any other turne whatsoever.

Of the carere.

When your horse is perfect in the manages beforesaid, you may then pass a *carere*, at your pleasure, which is to run your horse forth-right at his ful speed, & then making him stop quickly, suddenly, firme, & close on his buttock: in which lesson there needeth little instructions, but only some few observations, as first, that you make not your *carere* too long, whereby the horse may be weakned, nor too short, whereby his true wind and courage may be undiscovered, but competent and indifferent, as about 4 or 5 score yards at the most: then that you start him gently without a fright: and lastly, that you first give him a little warning with your bridle hand, and then stop him firmely and strongly; which

place

place of ſtop, if it be a little bending downa-ward, it is a great deale the better. And thus in theſe leſſons already ſhewed you, conſiſteth all the full perfection of a horſe for ſervice in the warres, which any painful man may bring his horſe wel unto in leſs then three moneths, how ever our ancients in former time have been blinded, and in the ſame practice, have waſted two yeers ere they brought it to perfection.

Now foraſmuch as to the Art of riding belongeth divers other ſalts and leaps, right pleaſant and curious to behold, and though not generally uſed in the wars, yet not utterly uſeleſſe for the ſame, and ſith they are many times very needful for the health of mans body I wil by no meanes abridge our Engliſh Husband-man of the ſame, but proceed to the leſſons which are meet for horſes of pleaſure, of which the firſt is to make a horſe bound aloft with al his foure feete from the ground and you ſhal doe it in this manner: when you have trotted your horſe forth-right a dozen or twenty yards, you ſhal ſtop him, and when he hath advanced once or twice, you ſha l a little ſtraiten your bridle-hand, and then give him the even ſtroke of both your ſpurs together hard, which at firſt will but onely quicken and amaze him, but doing it againe and againe, it wil breede other thoughts in him, and he being of ſpirit and mettall (as it is loſt labour to offer to teach a jade ſuch motions) hee wil preſently gather up his body, and either riſe little or much from the ground, then preſently cheriſh him, and after ſome reſt, offer him the like againe, and thus do till you have made him bound twice or thrice: then make much of him, and do no more for that day: the next day renue his Leſſon againe, and double his exerciſe, increaſing ſo day by day, till hee come to that perfectneſſe.

Horſes for pleaſure.

Of bounding aloft.

that he wil bound whenſoever you Spurs ſhal command him.

Of the Corvet. When your horſe can bound perfectly, then you ſhal teach him the corvet in this manner: you ſhal at the corner where two wals joyne together, a little hollow the ground a Horſes length or more, and then place a ſmooth ſtrong poſt by the ſide of the hollowneſſe a horſes length likewiſe from the wall; then over againſt the poſt faſten an yron Ring in the wal; this done, ride your horſe into the hollow place and faſten one of the reines of the Cavezan unto the Ring, and the other about the poſt, then after you have cheriſht your horſe, make him advance, by the help of the calves of your legges onely twice or thrice together; then let him ſtand ſtill, and cheriſh him; then make him to advance again at leaſt a dozen times together: then reſt, and after advance twenty or forty times together, daily increaſing his advancings as he growes perfect therein, till you perceive that he hath got ſuch habit therein that he will by no means preſſe forward, but keeping his ground certaine, advance both before and behinde of an equall height, and keepe one juſt and certaine time with the motion of your legs, neither doing ſlower nor faſter, but all after one manner and leiſure: but if you find that he doth not raiſe his hinder-parts high enough then you ſhal cauſe a foot-man to ſtand by you and as you make him advance before, ſo the foot-man by jerking him gently upon his hinder fillets with his rod, to raiſe up his hinder parts: alſo this wil bring your horſe in few daies to a perfect and brave corvet, ſo that after you may do it any place where you pleaſe without the help either of your wal or poſt or other by-ſtander.

Of the gallop Galliard. When your horſe is made perfect in the corvet and that

that he will do it readily and comely, you ſhall at the end of every third or fourth advancing, give him the ſtroak of your ſpurs, and make him bound aloft; then put him to his corvet againe as before, and then make him bound again, and thus at the end of every third advancing ſee you make him bound, for the length of a tilt bar, or an ordinary managing furrow, according to the horſes ſtrength: and this is called the *gallop galliard*, which if it be taught a horſe along by the ſide of ſome wal or ſmooth pale, it is ſo much the better, and a great deale fewer diſorders wil ariſe and trouble the Rider.

Of the Capriole

The next Leſſon you ſhal teach your horſe after the gallop galliard, is the *Capriolle* or Goates leap, which is the ſame manner of motion which the corvet is, only it is to be done forward, and much ground gained in the ſalt, & the horſe is to raiſe his hinder parts as high or rather higher then his fore-parts, and to keep rather a ſwifter then ſlower time in doing of it; therfore when you teach your horſe to do it you ſhal bring him into ſome hollow furrow where the ground is a little diſcending, and turning his head to the deſcent, put him into the corvet temperate and gently; then when you give him the calves of your legs to raiſe up his fore-parts in the ſame inſtant jerke your leg violently forward againe, that he may not ſticke, but carry his hinder legs after his fore-legges, and let ſome skilful foot-man ſtanding by your ſide jerk the horſe over the fillets with his Rod, & make him raiſe up his hinder parts: and thus do without ceaſing, till he performe your will nimbly and cunningly, and then forget not to cheriſh him and give him al comfort poſſible. And this leſſon and the other which conſiſt of violent and quicke ſalts or leapes, would ever be practiſed the firſt in a morning whilſt a horſe is freſh and

lusty for to put him to them after his fire edge is taken away, wil but bring him to a lothing of his instruction or at the best to do them but slovenly, beastly, and unwillingly.

There is also another motion which is pleasing to the eye, though it be very labour some to the body, which is to make a horse go side-long of which hand soever the rider is disposed, and is very necessary in the wars, because it is the avoyding of any blow comming from the enemy. This motion when you intend to teach your Horse, you shal draw up your bridle hand somewhat strait, and if your determine to have him go a side to your Right hand, lay your left rein close to his neck, and the calve of your left leg close to his side, and as you did in the *Incavalare*, make him lap or put his left leg over his right, then turning your rod back-ward, and jerking him gently on the left hinder thigh, make him bring his hinder darts to the right side also, and stand in an even line as at the first, then make him remove his fore-parts more then before so that he may stand as it were crosse over the even line, and then make him bring his hinder-parts after, and stand in an even line againe, and thus doe till by long practise hee will move his fore-parts and hinder parts both together, and go side long as far as you please, then cherish him: And if you will have him go toward your left hand, doe as you did before using all your helps and *correctives* on the right side only. And thus much I think is sufficient to have spoke touching all the several lessons meet to be taught to any horse whatsoever, whether he be for service or for pleasure, and which being performed artfully, carefully, & with patience you may presume your horse is compleat & perfect, the rather sith

Of going side.

no

no man can find out any invention, or teach any other motions to a horse, which may be good & comely, but you shal easily perceive that they are received from some one of these already rehearsed.

Now if you shal be called to ride before a *Prince* you must not observe the liberty of your own wil, but the state of the *person* before whom you ride, and the grace of the horse which you ride: and therfore being come into the Riding place, you shal chuse your ground, so that the *person* before whom you are to ride may stand in the midst thereof, so as he may wel behold the passage of the horse both to him, & from him: then being seated in a comely *order*, & every ornament about you handsome and decent, you shal put your horse gently forth into a comely trot, & being come against the person of estate, bow your body down to the *crest* of your horse, then Raising your self again, passe halfe a score yards beyond him, and there marking out a *narrow ring* thrust your horse into a gentle gallop, & give him two or three managing turnes in as short ground as may be to shew his nimblenesse and readiness as the then upon last turn, his being face towards the great derson, stop him comely and close, and make him to advance twice or thrice; then having taken breath, put him into a *gallop galliard*, and so passe along the length of the even *furrow* with thet salt, mrking him do it also round about the ring: then his face being toward the Prince, stop him and give him fresh breath, then thrust him into the *capriolle*, now and then make him yerk out behind, yet so as it may be derceived it is your wil, and the horses malice; and having gone about the Ring with that salt, and his face brought to look upon thk *Prince*, stop him againe and give him breath: Then drawing neerer

Riding before a Prince.

Oft be Carre golo.

to the Prince you ſhal beat the turne *Terra, Terra*, firſt in a pretty large compaſſe, then by ſmal degrees ſtraitning it a little and a little, draw it to the very center where you may give two or three cloſe flying turnes, and then changing your hands, undoe all that you did before, till you come to the Rings firſt largeneſſe; then the horſes face being direct upon the Prince, ſtop him, and put him into a corvet and in that motion hold him a pretty ſpace, making him do it firſt in an even line, firſt to the right hand, then to the left hand now backward, then forward again: and thus having performed every motion orderly and comely, bow down your body to the Prince, and ſo depart.

To ride for Recreation.

But if you intend to ride only for Recreation, then you ſhal mark what Leſſon your horſe is moſt imperfect in, & with that leſſon you ſhal ever when you ride both begin and end; after it you ſhal fall to thoſe Leſſons which are to your ſelf moſt difficult, and by the practice of them bring your ſelf to a perfectneſſe, then conſequently to all other Leſſons, repeating (as it were) every one over more or leſs, leaſt want of uſe breed forgetfulnes, and forgetfulnes utter ignorance: but if your Recreation in Riding be tyed to an eſpecial rules of health, and that your practice therein proceed more from the commandement of your Phyſitian then your pleaſure, then I would wiſh you in the morning firſt to begin with a ſtirring or rough leſſon, as the *galop gallard, bounding*, or ſuch like, which having a little ſtirred your blood & made it warm, then you ſhal then calm it again with a gentle manage, or the galloping of large Rings: then to ſtir your ſpirits again, to bring the ſame downe, or procure apperite, paſſe into the *capriole* or *corvet*, and then to make quiet theſe moved parts,

ſet

set the turn called *Terra, Terra*, the *Incavalare*, and such like. And thus one while stirring your blood, & another while moderately allaying such stirring, you shal give your body that due and proper exercise which is most fit for health & long life. Many other waies this recreation may be used for the good of a mans body, which because perticular infirmitis must give perticular rules how and when to vse it, I wil at this time speak no further thereof, but refer the exercise to their own pleasures which shal practice the same, & to the good they shal find in he practice.

## CHAP. 3.

### *Of the breeding of all sorts of Horses fit for the Husband-mans use.*

THe mindes of men being swaied with many various motions, take delight somtimes to be recreated rather with contemplative delights, then with active pleasures; & there is strong reason therfore, because disability of body, or affairs of the Kingdom or Common-wealth, may take a man from those pre-occupations which otherwise might stir him to more laborious exercise: and of these complative recreations I can prefer none before that Gentlemanly and beneficial delight of breeding creatures meet for the use of man, and the good of the Common-wealth wherein he liveth, and of these breedings I cannot esteem any so excellent, as the breeding of horses, both for the pleasure we gain therby in our own particular service, & also for the strength defence, and tillage of the Kingdom.

He therfore that fureth his recreation to the breeding of horses, must first have respect unto the ground wherein he lieth or enjoyeth; for every ground is not meete

The breeding of horses.

to

to breed on, but some too good, some too bad, some too good, because they may be exhausted to a more beneficial commodity, horses having a world of casualties attending on them, and many years before the true profit doth arise; and some too bad, because the extreame barrennesse of the same will deny competent nourishment to the thing bred, and so to the losse of time and profit adde mortality.

Of groudds to breed on.

The grounds then meet to breed Horses on, would neither be extream fruitful, nor extream barren, but of an indifferent mixture, yeilding rather a shore sweet burthen, then a long, rich, and fruitful; it would rather lye high then low, but howsoever firm and hard under the foot; it would be full of Mole hils, uneven treadings, hils, and much craggineſſe, to bring colts to nimblenes of foot; it would have good store of fresh waters, an open sharpe ayre, and some convenient covert; and this ground is best if it be several and incloſed, yet may be bred upon, though it be open and in common, only some more carefulneſſe to be looked for, a little before, and in the time of Foaling. Nay, the grounds which are neither several nor common, are very good also to breed on, and those be your feathering grounds which we call particular grounds; for though they be proper commonly to one man, yet they are not divided nor eaten with mowe then at their owners pleaſure: and these feathering grounds are as good as any grounds for the first nourishing of a Foal, if they be amongſt Corn grounds, or any grain, except Peaſe only.

Division of grounds.

If you have much ground to breed on, you shall divide it into many pastures, the leaſt and barrenneſt for your Stallion to run with your Mares in, those which have leaſt danger of waters are for your Mares to foal in the

the fruitfulleſt and of beſt growth for your Mares to give milk in, and the moſt ſpacious and unevenſt to bring up your Colts in after they are weaned.

For the choice of a good Stallion, and which is beſt for our Kingdome, opinion ſwayeth ſo far, that a man can hardly give well-received directions; yet ſurely, if men will be ruled by the truth of experience, the beſt Stalion to beget horſes for the wars, is the *Courſer*, the *Jennet*, or the *Turks*; the beſt for courſing and running is the *Barbary*; the beſt for hunting is the *Baſtard Courſer* begot of the *Engliſh*; the beſt for the Coach is the *Flemmiſh*; the beſt for travaile or buttlen is the *Engliſh*, and the beſt for the eaſe is the *Iriſh-hobby*. Choice of Stalion and which is beſt.

For the choice of Mares, you ſhall greatly reſpect their ſhapes and mettals, eſpecially that they be beautifully fore-handed, for they give much goodneſſe to their Foals: and for their kinds, any of the *Races* before ſpoken of is very good, or any of them mixt with our true *Engliſh Races*, as *Baſtard-courſer*, *Mare*, *Baſtard-Jennet*, *Baſtard-Turk*, *Barbary*, *&c.* Choice of Mare.

The beſt time to put your Stallion & Mares together, is in the middle of *March* if you have any Graſſe, as you ſhould have great care for that purpoſe, and one Foal falling in *March*, is worth two falling in *May*, becauſe he poſſeſſeth as it were two winters in a year, and is therby ſo hardned, that nothing can almoſt after impair him, and the beſt time to take your Horſe from the Mares again, is at the end of *April*, or midle of *May*, in which you ſhal note, that from the middle of *March* till the midſt of *May*, you may at any time put your ſtalions to your Mares, & a months continuance is ever ſufficient; provided ever as near as you can, that you put them together in the increaſe of the Moon; for Foales When to put them together.

got

gor in the wane are accounted ſtrong or healthfull.

Of covering Mares.

For covering of Mares, it is to be done two wayes, out of hand, or in hand; out of hand, as when the horſe and Mares run together abroad, as is before ſaid, or turned looſe in to ſome empty barn or three nights one after another, which is the ſureſt and the ſafeſt way for a Mares holding, or in hand, early in a morning and late at an evening two or three daies together, when you bring the horſe to the Mare, and make him cover her once or twice at a time, holding him faſt in your hand, and when the act is done, leade him back to the ſtable and in this act you ſhal ever obſerve, as ſoone as the horſe commeth from her backpreſently to caſt a pail of cold water on her hinder parts, or elſe to chaſe her ſwiftly up and down, for feare by ſtanding ſtil ſhe caſt out the ſeed, which is very ordinary.

To know if a Mare hold,

To know whether your Mare hold to the horſe or no there be divers waies, of which the beſt is by offering her the horſe again at the next increaſe of the Moone, which if ſhe willingly receive it is a ſigne ſhe held not before; but if ſhe refuſe, then it is moſt certain ſhee is ſped; or if you poure a ſpoonful of cold vinegar into her eare, if ſhe ſhake onely her head, it is a ſigne ſhee holds, but if ſhe ſhake head, body and all, then truly it is a ſigne that ſhe doth not hold: Laſtly, if after ſhe is covered you ſee her ſcour, her coat grow ſmooth and ſhining, and that ſhe doth (as it were) renue and increaſe in liking, then it is a ſigne ſhe holds: but if ſhe hold at a ſtay without any amendment, then offer the horſe again, for ſhe is not ſerved.

To conceive male-foales,

To make your Mares conceive moſt male foales, you ſhal be ſure to keepe your ſtallion proude, and your Mare poore, that his luſt maſtering hers, he may only

be predomidant and chiefe in the action: many other rules fancie deviſeth, but they erre in their ends, and I would by no meanes have this diſcourſe capable of any uncertainty.

If you have any advantage given you by friendſhip, or otherwiſe whereby you may have a Mare at the preſent very well covered, only yours is not yet ready for the horſe, you ſhall in this caſe to provoke luſt in her, give her to drinke good ſtore of clarified honey, and new milk mixt together, and then with a buſh of nettles all to nettle her privy parts, and then immediatly offer her the horſe. To provoke luſt.

To keep your Mares from barrennes, and to make them ever apt to conceive foales, you ſhal by no meanes feed too extream fat, but keep them in a middle ſtate of body, by moderate labour, for the leaner they are when they come take horſe, the much better they will conceive. To keep Mares from barenneſſe.

After your Mares have been covered, and that you perceive in them the marks of conceiving, you ſhall let them reſt three weeks or a month, that the ſubſtance may knit; then after moderately labour or travell them, till you ſee them ſpring, and then turn them abroad, and let them run till they foal; for to houſe them after is dangerous and unwholſome. Ordering Mares after covering.

If your Mare be hard of foaling, or will not cleanſe after ſhe hath foaled, you ſhall take a pint of running water, where in good ſtore of Fennell hath beene boyled, and as much ſtrong, old, ſweet wine, with a fourth part of the beſt Sallet oyle, and having mixt them wel togeither, being but luke-warme, poure it into her noſtrils, and then hold and ſtop them cloſe, that ſhee may ſtraine her whole body, and it will preſently give her eaſe. A help for Mares after foaling.

As

Ordering Mares after foaling.

As soon as your Mare hath fol'd, you shal remove her into the best grasse you have, which is fresh and unfoyled, to make her milk spring; and if it be early in the yeere you shal have a care that there be good shelter in the same, and there let her nourish her foale most part of the summer following.

Weaning of foales.

As touching the weaning of foales, though some use to wean them at *Michaelmas*, or *Martilmas* following, out of a supposition that the winter milk is not good or wholsome, yet they are much decieved, and if you can by any convenient meanes (saving greater losses) let your foales run with their Dams the whole yeere, even till they foale againe, for it will keepe the foale better in health, in more lust, and least subject to tenderneese.

Ordering after the weanings.

When you intend to weane your foales, you shall take them from their Dams over-night, and drive them into some empty house, where they may rest, and the Mares be free from their noises: then one the morning following give to every foale fasting a branch or two of *Saven* annointed or rold in butter, and then having fasted two houres after, give him a little meat as grasse, hay, or garbadge of Corne, with some cleare water, & do this three daies together; then seeing that they have forgotten their Dams, geld such colt foales as you intend to make geldings of; and after their swellings are past, put them into your other colt-foales into a *pasture* provided for them by themselves, and your fille-foales into another by themselves: which *pastures* may either be high Woods, Commons, or such like spatious peeces of ground, where they may run till they be ready for the Saddle.

Gelding of Colts.

Now, albeit I proportion unto you this manner of gelding of Foales, yet I would have you know that the

beſt and ſafeſt way to geld them is, if it may be under the Damme when they ſuck, as at nine or at fifteene dayes of age, if the ſtones appear, or elſe ſo ſoone as you can by any meanes perceive them fall downe into the cod, for then there will be no danger of ſwelling, or other miſchiefes, which commonly attend the action. And thus much touching the breeding of horſes, and the obſervations due to the ſame, through all the courſes and paſſages thereof, as hath beene found by ancient practiſe and experience, as appears in my Maſterpiece.

## CHAP. 4.

*Of horſes for travell, and how to make them amble.*

THe Husbandman, whoſe occupation is the generall affairs of the Common-wealth, as ſome to the markets, ſome to the *City*, & ſome to the Seats of *Iuſtice* muſt neceſſarily be imployed almoſt in continuall travell: and therfore it is meet that he be provided ever of a good and eaſie travelling horſe.

The markes whereby he ſhal chooſe a good travelling horſe, are theſe: he ſhal be of good colour and ſhape, leane headed, and round foreheaded, a full eye, open noſtril, wide jawed, looſe thropled, deep neckt, thinne creſted, broad breſt, flat chin'd, out rib'd, cleane limb'd, ſhort joynted, ſtrong hooved, wel metald, neither fiery nor craving, ſtrong in every member, and eaſie to mount and get up upon; he ſhal follow without haling, and ſtand ſtill when hee is reſtrained. The marks of a good travelling horſe.

Now foralmuch as there are a world of good horſes which are not eaſie, and a world of eaſie horſes which are not good, you ſhal by theſe directions following make any horſe amble whatſoever: firſt, then you ſhal underſtand that practice hath made divers men believe To make a horſe amble.

that

Divers wayes of ambling.

that divers waies they can make a horſe amble, as by gagging them in the mouthes, by toyling them in deep earth, by the help of ſhooes, by galloping and tyring, or ſuch like, all which are ill & imperfect: yet the truth is, there is but one certaine and true way to compaſſe it, and that is to make a ſtrong garth webbe; flat and well quilted with cotten, foure paſternes for the ſmals of his fore-legs, under his knees, and for the ſmals of his hinder legs ſomewhat below the ſpavin joynts: to theſe paſternes you ſhal fixe ſtrong ſtraps of leather, with good yron buckles to make ſhorter or longer at pleaſure and having plac't them about his foure legs, you ſhal take two ſeveral round ropes of an eaſie twiſt, made with ſtrong loopes at either end, and not above eight handfuls in length; and theſe the horſe ſtanding to a true proportion, you ſhall faſten to the 4 ſtraps of leather; to wit, one of them to his neere fore-leg, and his neer hinder-leg, and the other to his farre fore-leg and his farre-hinder-legge, which is cal'd amongſt Horſe-men trammeling: with theſe you ſhal let him walk in ſome incloſed piece of ground, till he can ſo perfectly go in the ſame, that when at any time you offer to chaſe him, you may ſee him amble ſwiftly and truly; then you ſhal take his backe and ride him with the ſame trammels, at leaſt three or foure times a day, till you find that he is ſo perfect that no way can be ſo rough and uneven as to compel him to alter his ſtroke, to go unnimbly. This done, you may firſt take away one trammel, then after the other and only wreath about under his fore fet- lockes thick and heavy great roles of hay or ſtraw-ropes, and ſo ride him with the ſame a good ſpace after; for it will make him amble eaſie; then cut them away, and ride and exerciſe him without any thing but the ordinary

Of trammeling.

Of wiſping.

help of the bridles, and there is no doubt but hee will keep his pace, to your full contentment and pleaſure.

Now during this time of your teaching, if your horſe ſtrike not a large ſtroke, & overreach enough, then you ſhal make the tramel the ſtraiter, but if he overreach too much, then you ſhal give it more liberty: and herein you ſhall find that an inch ſtraitning, or an inch inlarging will adde or abate at leaſt half a foot, an whole foot and direct ſtroke, and thus much touching the teaching of any horſe to amble, of what nature or quality ſoever he be, or how unapt or untoward ſoever to learn.

## CHAP. V.

### *Of the ordering and dieting of the Hunting-horſe.*

SOme love hunting for the exerciſe of their own bodies, ſome for the chaſe they hunt, ſome for the running of the hounds, and ſome for the training of their horſes, whereby they may find the excellency of their goodneſſe and indurance: to him therefore which placeth his delight in the goodneſſe of his horſe, I would wiſh him thus to order & diet him, & he ſhal moſt aſſuredly come to the true knowledge of the beſt worth which is within him; and if in theſe rules, which I now ſhew, I be leſſe curious then formerly I have been, let no man wonder thereat, but know that *time* (which is the mother of experience) doth in our labors ſhew us more new and more neerer waies to our ends, then at the firſt we conceived: And though when I firſt practiſed this Art: I knew not how to bring a very fat horſe from *Michaelmas* till *Chriſtmas* to ſhew his utmoſt perfection, I know now in two moneths (though never ſo foule)

how to make him for any wager, daring now boldly to adventure on that, with which before I thought almost present death to offer: thus doth observation and labour find out the darkest secrets in Art.

*Taking up of the hunting horse.*

To beginne then with the first ordering of a hunting horse, you shal know that the best time to take him from grass is about Bartholmew-tide, the day being fair dry and pleasant; & as soon as he is taken up, to let him stand all that night in any vast house, to empty his body, the next day stable him, & give him wheat straw if you please, but no longer in any wise; for though the old rule is to take up horses bellies with straw, yet it straitneth the guts, heats the liver, & hurteth the wind: therfore let only moderate exercise, as riding him forth to water morning and evening, and other airings do what you expect straw should: and for his food let it be hay that is sweet though rough, and either old, or at least well sweat in the Mowe.

*Clothing the horse.*

After his belly is emptied, you shall cloath him first with a single cloath, whil'st the heat endureth, and after with more, as you shall see occasion require, & when you beginne to cloath the horse, then shall you dresse, curry, & rub him also. Now for as much as it is a rule with ignorant horse-men, that if the have but the name of keeping a hunting horse, they wil with al care (without any reason) lay many cloaths upon him, as if it were a speciall physick, you shal know they are much deceived therein, and may sooner do hurt then good with multiplicity of cloaths: therefore to cloath a horse right, cloath according to the weather, and the temper of his body: and thus if you see your horse be sleight, smooth and wel coloured, then cloath him temperately, as with a single cloath of canvase or sack-cloth at the most;

moſt; and if then as the year grows colder, you find his hair riſe or ſtare about his neck, flanks or outward parts, then you ſhal adde to a wollen cloath, or more if need require, till his hair fall ſmooth again, holding it for your rule, that a rough coat ſhews want of cloath, and a ſmooth coat cloathing enough, yet if your horſe have been clean fed, taken exerciſe ſufficient, and hath not much glut within him, if then you find that in the night he ſweateth in his cloaths, then it is a ſigne hee is over fed: but if he be foule inwardly, or hath not ſweat formerly, and now ſweats comming to good feeding, then you ſhall augment rather then diminiſh any clothing for his foulenes, but then breaketh out and being evacuated, he will come to drineſſe of body again, and ſo continue all the year after: and ſurely for an ordinary proportion of cloaths, I hold a Canvaſe cloath, and a cloath of Houſe-wives wollen to be at full ſufficient for a hunting-horſe.

Of dreſſing the hunting horſe.

A Hunting-horſe would be dreſt in his dayes of reſt, twice a day, that is, before he go to his morning watering, and before he go to his evening watering: for the manner of his dreſſing, after he is uncloathed, you ſhal firſt curry him from the tips of the ear to the ſetling on of his tail, al his whole body moſt entirely over with an iron comb, his legs under the knees and cambrels only excepted; then you ſhal duſt him, then curry him again all over with a round bruſh of Briſtles, then duſt him the ſecond time, then rub all the looſe hairs away with your hands wet in clean water, and ſo rub til the horſe be as dry as at the firſt, then rub all his body and limbs over with an hair-cloth: laſtly, rub him over with a fine white linnen rubber, then pick his eyes, noſtrils, ſheath, cods, tuell, and feet very cleane, and ſo

cloath him, and ſtop him round with wiſps, if you water within the houſe; otherwiſe ſaddle him after his body is wrapt about in a wollen cloth, and ſo ride him forth to the wate r.

Of watering the hunting horſe.

The beſt water for a hunting horſe, is either a running river, or a clear ſpring, remote from the ſtable a mile, or a mile and a half at moſt, and near unto ſome plain piece of ground, where you may ſcope and galop after he hath drunk; and as ſoon as you bring your horſe to the water, let him take his full draught without trouble or interruption: then galop and ſcope him up & down a little and ſo bring him to the water again, and let him drink what he pleaſe, and then gallop him again: and thus do till yon find he wil drink no more; then having ſcopt him a little, walk him with all gentleneſſe home, and there cloath him up, ſtop him round with great ſoft wiſps, and ſo let him ſtand an hour upon his bridle, and then feed him.

Of feeding the hunting horſe.

To ſpeak firſt of the food for hunting horſes, the moſt ordinary is good ſweet ſound oats, neither throughly dryed with age or elſe on the kilne, or in the Sun, and if your horſe be either low of fleſh, or not of perfect ſtomack, if to two parts of thoſe oats you ad a third part of clean old beans, it ſhal be very good and wholeſome and if your horſe be in diet for a match, & have loſt his ſtomack, if then you cauſe theſe beans to be ſpelted upon a miln, and ſo mixt with oats, it will recover him. The next food, which is ſomewhat ſtronger and better, is bread thus made: take two buſhels of good clean beans and one buſhel of wheat, and grind them together; then through a fine Range, bolt out the quantity of two pecks of pure meal, and bake it in two or three loaves by it ſelf, and the reſt ſift thaough a meal five; and knead

knead it with water, and good ſtore of Barme, and ſo bake it in great loaves, and with the courſer bread feed your horſe in his reſt, & with the finer againſt the days of ſore labour. Now for the hours of his feeding it ſhal be in the morning after his comming from water, an hour after high noon: after his comming from his evening water, and at nine or ten of the clock at night upon the days of his reſt; but upon the dayes of his exerciſe, two hours after he is throughly cold inwardly and outwardly, and then after according to the houres before mentioned. Laſtly, for the proportion of food, *you ſhall keep no certain quantity, but according to the horſes ſtomack*, that is to ſay, *you ſhall feed him by a little at once, ſo long as he eates with a good appetite; but when he begins to trifle or fumble with his meat, then to give him no more*. Now for his hay, you ſhall ſee that it bee dry ſhort uplandiſh hay, and ſo it be ſweet, reſpect not how courſe or rough it is, ſith it is more to ſcoure his teeth, and cool his ſtomacke, then for any nouriſhment expected from it.

Touching the horſes exerciſe, *which is only in the following of the hounds*, you ſhall be ſure to train him after thoſe which are moſt ſwift and ſpeedy; for ſo you ſhal know the truth, and not be deceived in your opinion. Touching the dayes, *it ſhall be twice a week at leaſt, but moſt commonly thrice*: as for the quantity of his exerciſe, it muſt be according to his foulneſſe or cleanneſſe: for if he be very foul, *you muſt then exerciſe moderately to break his greaſe*: if half foul, half clean, *then ſomewhat more to melt his greaſe*; and if altogether cleane, then you may take what you pleaſe of him (provided, that you do nothing to diſcourage his ſpirits, to abate his mettall, or to lame his limbes) and after every

The exerciſe of the horſe.

dayes exercise be assured either to give him the same night, or the next day following, something by way of scouring or otherwise, to take away the grease formerly melted, by means whereof you shall be ever sure to keep your horse in all good health and perfection.

The scouring of the horse.

The best and most excellentest way to scour or purge your horse from al grease, glut or filthiness within his body, which is a secret hitherto was never either sufficiently taught, or perfectly learned, is to take of Anniseeds three ounces, of Cummine-seeds six drammes, of Carthamus a dram and a half, of Fennegreek-seed one ounce two drams, of Brimstone one ounce and a half, beat all these to a fine powder, and searse them; then take of Sallet oyl a pint and two ounces, of hony a pound and a half, and of white wine four pints, then with as much fine white meal as wil suffice, make al into a strong stiffe paste, and knead and work it well: this paste keep in a clean cloath, for it will last long, and after your horse hath been hunted, and is at night or in the morning exceeding thirstie, take a ball thereof as much as a mans fist, and wash and dissolve it in a gallon or two of cold water, and it will make the water look white like milk: then offer it the horse to drink in the dark, least the colour displease him: if he drink it, then feed him; but if he refuse to drink it, yet care not, but let him fast without drink til he take it, which assuredly he will do in twice or thrice offering, and after once he hath taken it, be then assured he wil forsake any other drink for it: of this drink your horse can never take to much, nor too oft, if he have exercise: otherwise it feeds to sore. For all inward infirmities whatsoever it is a present remedy: therefore I would not wish any horseman of vertue at any time to be without it; and be-

ing

ing once made, it wil laſt three or four months at leaſt.

After your horſe hath been exerciſed either with hunting, running, train-ſents, or otherwiſe: you ſhall ever cool him well in the field before you bring him home: but being come to the ſtable, you ſhal neither waſh nor walk, but inſtantly houſe him: give him ſtore of freſh litter and rub him therewith, and with dry cloathes, till there be not a wet hair about him, then cloath him with his ordinary cloathes, and wiſpe him round: then caſt another ſpare cloath over him, which you may bate at your pleaſure, and ſo let him ſtand til it be time to feed him. And thus you may keep any hunting horſe either for match or otherwiſe, in as good ſtate & ſtrength as any horſe man in this Kingdome though he exceed you far both in reputation and experience. Ordering a horſe after exerciſe.

## CHAP. 6.

### *Of the ordering and dyeting of the running horſe,*

IF any Husbandman have his mind taken up onely with the delight of running horſes, which is a Noble ſport, and though not of ſo long indurance, yet equall with any before ſpoke of, he ſhall for the bettering of his knowledge give to his memory theſe few rules following by which he ſhall rightly order and dyet him.

Firſt, for his taking up from graſs (for there for order ſake we muſt firſt begin) it ſhall be at the ſame time of the year, and after the ſame manner that you tooke up your hunting horſe, and till you have enſeamed him, hardned his fleſh, taken away his inward greaſe, and brought him to a good perfectneſſe of wind, you ſhall cloath him, dreſſe him, water him, feed him, exerciſe him, purge him, and order him after labour, in all points and all things as you did your hunting horſe. Of his taking up.

Of cloathing him. When he is thus cleane of body and wind, you ſhall then lay on him ſome more cloathes, then you did on, your hunting horſe, to purge his body a little the more, and to make him the more apt to ſweat, and evacuate humours as they ſhall grow: the ordinary quantity whereof, would be a warm narrow wollen cloth about his body on either ſide his heart, then a fair white ſheet, a wollen cloth above it, and a canvaſe cloth or two above it, and before his breaſt a wollen cloth at leaſt two double: he would continually ſtand upon a clean litter, and have his ſtable very dark, and perfumed with Iuniper, when as the ſtrength of his dung ſhall annoy it.

Of dreſſing him. For his dreſſing, it ſhal be in all points done as you did to your hunting horſe, onely to dreſſe him once a day is ſufficient, and that ever in the after-noon: but for rubbing his limbs or body with dry cloaths or wiſps, you ſhall do that as often as you come into the ſtable, provided that you turn but his cloaths up, but not take them from his body.

Of watering him. You ſhall water your running horſe as you watered your hunting horſe, & give him the ſame exerciſe after it, only you ſhal not bring him into the ſtable of at leaſt an hour or more after he is watered.

Of feeding him. The beſt foods for your running horſe, is either good ſweet oats well dried, ſunned, and beaten, or bread made of two parts wheat, and but one part beans, and boulted, and ſifted and knodden, as was before ſhewed, onely if you ad to your better ſort of bread the whites of twenty or thirty egges, and with the barm a little Ale alſo, it will be much the better; for you ſhal not reſpect how little water you uſe at al: the hours you feed in, and the quantity of the food ſhall be the ſame, and in the ſame manner as was mentioned before, for the hunting

hunting horſe, yet with theſe obſervations, that if your horſe be very lean, ſickly, & have a weak ſtomack, that then you may as before is ſhewd; give him with his oats a few ſpelted beans, or elſe waſh his oats in ſtrong Ale or Beere, or in the whites of a couple of egs.

Touching his exerciſe, it conſiſteth in two kinds, the one ayring, the other courſing: Ayring is a moderate and gentle exerciſe, which you ſhall uſe morning and evening, by riding or leading your horſe a foot pace (but Riding is better, and leſſe in danger of cold) in the morning after his water up to the hils, and in the evening after his water by the river ſide. by the ſpace of an hour or two together; and before you lead him forth to air, you ſhall be ſure to give him a rere eg broken into his mouth, as ſoon as his bridle is put on, for it will increaſe wind: and this airing you ſhall by no means forbear, but upon his dayes of purging or ſweating, or when it much raineth, for then to ayr is unwholeſome. Again if your horſe be very fat, you ſhall air before Sun riſe, and after Sun ſet: but if he be lean, then you ſhall let him have all the ſtrength and comfort of the Sun you can deviſe, and during this ayring, you ſhal be ſure that your horſe be cloathed very warm, eſpecially before the breaſt, and on each ſide the heart, for cold to a running horſe is mortall. Of his exerciſe by ayring.

You ſhal courſe your horſe according to his ſtrength and ability of body, that is to ſay, twice a week, thrice, or as oft as you ſee cauſe, & you ſhal courſe him ſomtimes in his cloaths to make him ſweat, and conſume greaſe, and that muſt be done moderately and gently; and ſometimes wiih out his cloath, to increaſe wind; & that ſhall be done ſharply and ſwiftly: you ſhal by keeping you horſe faſting the night before, be ſure, that his Exerci e by courſing.

body

body be empty before he do courſe: to waſh his tongue & noſtrils with vinegar, or to piſs in his mouth ere you take his back is very wholſome: you ſhal lead him in your hand well and warm clothed to the courſe, and there uncloath him, and rub his limbs well: then having courſt him; after a little breath-taking cloath him again and ſo ride him home, there rub him throughly, and let him ſtand till he be fully cold, which perceived, let his firſt meat you give him, be a handful or two of the ears of pollard wheat: then after, his ordinary food as aforeſaid.

Of ſweats. There is alſo another exerciſe for your running horſe which is, ſweats in his cloaths, either abroad or in the houſe: for ſweats in his cloths abroad, they are thoſe which are taken upon the courſe, & are formerly ſpoke of, that they muſt be given by a moderate galloping, no man running, and as ſoon as your horſe hath paſt over his courſe, and is in a high ſweat you ſhal inſtantly have him home and there lay more cloathes upon him, and keep him ſtirring till he have ſweat ſo in the ſtable an hour or more; then abate his cloathes by little and little, till he be perfectly cooled and dried, which you muſt further, by rubbing him continually with dry cloathes and by laying dry cloathes on, and taking the wet away, but for ſweats in his clothes, without any exerciſe abroad, you ſhall give them either when the weather is ſo much unſeaſonable, that you cannot go forth, or when your horſe is ſo much in danger of lameneſſe, that you dare not ſtrain him; and you ſhall do it thus: firſt take a blanket folded and warmed very hot and wrap it about his body, then over it lay two or three more, and wiſp them round, then over them as many cover lids, and pin them faſt and cloſe; then make the horſe

horſe ſtir up and down the ſtable till he begin to ſweat, then lay on more cloaths, and as the ſweat trickleth down his face, ſo rub it away with dry cloaths till he have ſweat ſufficiently: then (as before is ſhewed) abate the cloathes by little and little, and rub him in every part, till he be as dry as at firſt.

Of ſcouring him.

After every courſe or ſweat, you ſhal ſcour or purge your horſe in the ſame manner, and with the ſame medicine that you did your Hunting horſe; for it is the beſt that can by art be invented, being both a purge and a Reſtorative, cleanſing and comforting all the parts of a Horſes body: but if you think it purgeth not enough, then you ſhall take twenty Raiſins of the Sunne, the ſtones pickt out, and ten Figs ſlit in the midſt, boil them in a pottle of fair running water, til it come to be thick, then mixe it with powder of Lyquoras, Anniſeeds, and Sugar-candy, til it come to a ſtiff paſte, then make pretty round bals thereof, and roule them up in butter, and give your horſe three or four of them the next morning after his ſweat or courſe, and ride him an hour after, and then ſet him up warm.

Ordering after exerciſe.

After your horſe hath been courſt or ſweat, and is as before ſaid cold and dry, you ſhall then unbridle him, give him ſome few wheat eares, and then at an hour or two after, give him a very ſweet maſh, then ſome bread after, which at his due hour dreſſe him, and give him when you find him thirſty ſome cold water, with a bal of your leaven diſſolved into it, and ſo let him ſtand till you feed him for all night.

General rules for a running horſe.

Courſe not your horſe ſore for at leaſt four or five dayes before you run your match, leaſt the ſoreneſſe of his limbs abate him of his ſpeed.

Except your horſe be a very fowl feeder muzzle him

not

not above two or three nights before his match, and the night before his bloudy courſes.

Give your horſe as wel his gentle courſes, as his ſharp courſes upon the Race he muſt run, that he may as well find comfort as diſpleaſure thereon.

In training your horſe, obſerve not the number of the miles, but the labour fit for your horſe.

Be ſure upon the match day that your Horſe be empty, and that he take his reſt untroubled, till you prepare to lead him forth.

Shooe your Horſe ever a day before you run him, that the pain of the hammers knocks may be out of his feet.

Saddle your Horſe on the Race day in the ſtable before you lead him forth, and fixe both the pannell and the girths to his backe and ſides with ſhooe-makers wax, to prevent all dangers.

Lead your horſe to his courſe with all gentleneſſe, and give him leave to ſmell to other Horſes dung, that thereby he may be inticed to ſtale and empty his body as he goes.

When you come to the place where you muſt ſtart, firſt rub his limbs well, then uncloath him, then take his back, and the word given, ſtart him with all gentleneſſe and quietneſſe that may be, leaſt doing any thing raſhly, you happen to choak him in his own wind.

And thus much for the ordering and dyeting of the Running horſe, and the particularities belonging to the ſame.

## CHAP. 7.

### *The ordering of the travelling horſe.*

NOw for our Husbandmans travelling horſe, which is to carry him in his journies, and about his buſi-

neſſe

neſs in the Country, he ſhal firſt feed him with the beſt ſweet hay, dry oats, or dry beanes and oats mixt together: in his travaile he ſhall feed him according to his ſtomacke, more or leſſe, and in his Reſt at a certaine proportion, as half a peck at each watering, is utterly ſufficient. General rules for a traveling horſe.

In your travaile feed your horſe early, that he may take his reſt ſoon.

In travaile by no meanes waſh nor walk your horſe, but be ſure to rub him clean.

Water him a mile before you come to your Inne, or more, as ſhal lie in your journey, or if you fail thereof, forbear it till next morning,, for water hath often done hurt, want of water never did any.

Let your horſe neither eat nor drink when he is extreame hot, for both are unwholſome.

When the dayes are extream hot, labour your horſe morning and evening, and forbear high-noon.

Take not your ſaddle off ſuddenly but at leiſure, and laying on the cloth, lay on the ſadle again til he be cold.

Litter your horſe deep, and in the dayes of his reſt, let it alſo lye under him.

Dreſſe your horſe twice a day when he reſts, and once when he travails.

If the horſe bee ſtoned let him goe to ſoile, and bee purged with graſſe in May; a moneth is time long enough, and that graſſe which grows in Orchards under trees is beſt.

Let bloud ſpring and fall, for they are the beſt times to prevent ſickneſſes.

In your journying light at every ſteep hill, for it is a great refreſhing and comfort to your horſe.

Before you ſleep every night in your journey ſee all your.

your horſes feet ſtopt with Oxe dung, for it taketh a-the heat of travail and ſurbating.

Manyother neceſſary rules there are, but ſo depending upon theſe already ſhewed, that who ſo keepeth them, ſhall not be ignorant of any of the reſt, for they differ more in name then nature.

## CHAP. VIII.

### *How to cure all general inward ſickneſſes in horſes, which trouble the whole body: of Fevers of all ſorts, Plagues, infections, and ſuch like.*

SIckneſſes in generall are of two kinds, one offending the whole body, the other a particular member: the firſt hidden, and not viſible, the other apparant and known by his outward demonſtration. Of the firſt then which offendeth the whole body, are Fevers of all ſorts as the Quotidian, the Tertian, the Quartan, the Continuall, the Hittique, the Fevers in Autumne, in Summer, or in Winter, the Fever by ſurfeit, Fever Peſtilent, Fever accidental, or the general plague, they are al known by theſe ſigns, much trembling, panting, and ſwearing, a ſullen countenance that was wont to be cheerful, hot breath, faintnes in labour, decay of ſtomock & coſtivenes in the body: any, or al of which when you perceive, firſt let the horſe blood, and after give him this drink:

The Cure. Take of *Sellaaine* roots and leaves and all, a good handfull, as much *Wormwood*, and as much *Rew*, waſh them well, and then bruiſe them in a morter, which done, boyle them in a quart of Ale well, then ſtrain them, and adde to the liquor half a pound of ſweet butter, then being but luke-warm give it the horſe to drink: or half an ounce of *Diapent*, in a pint of Muskadine.

Chap.

## CHAP. IX.

### *Of the Head-ach, Frenzie or Staggers.*

THe ſigns to know theſe diſeaſes, which indeed are all of one nature, and work all one effect of mortality, are hanging down of the head, watry eyes, rage and reeling. And the cure is to let the horſe bloud in the neck, three mornings together, and every morning to take a great quantity, then after each morning bloud-letting, to give the horſe the drink, Take a quart of Ale and boyle it with a big white bread cruſt then take it from the fire and diſſolve three or foure ſpoonfuls of honey in it, then luke-warm give it the horſe to drink, and cover his temples over with a plaiſter of pitch, and keep his head exceeding warm, let his meat be little, and his ſtable dark. But to give him the former quantity of *Diapente*, either in Muskadine, or hony water is the beſt cure. The Cure.

## CHAP. X.

### *Of the ſleeping evill.*

THe Sleeping evill or Lethargy in horſes proceeds from cold, fleamy, moiſt humours, which bind up the vitall parts and makes them dull and heavy. The ſignes are continuall ſleeping or deſire thereunto. The cure is, to keep him much waking, and twice in one week to give him as much ſweet ſope (in nature of a pill) as a Ducks Egge, and then after give him to drink a little new milk and honey which is the only cure at the firſt, for this diſeaſe. But to be certain, I pray look in my Maſter-piece, and there you ſhall find of the infirmity more largely diſcourſed of, this being but a generall cure of all Cattle, and not particularly handled, of horſes, as that is. The Cure.

Chap.

## CHAP. XI.

### *Of the falling evill, Plant-ſtrooke, Night-mare, or Palſey.*

THough theſe diſeaſes have ſeveral faces, and look as though there were much difference betweene them, yet they are in nature al one, and proceed al from one offence, which is onely cold flegmatick humours, ingendred about the brain, and benumming the ſenſes, weakning the members, ſometimes cauſing a horſe to fall downe, and then it is called the falling evill: ſometimes weakning but one member only, then it is called Planet-ſtrook; ſometimes oppreſſing a horſes ſtomack, and making him ſweat in his ſleep, and then it is called the Night-mare,: and ſometimes ſpoyling an eſpeciall member, by ſome ſtrange contraction, and then it is called a Palſey. The cure for any of theſe infirmities, is to give the horſe this purging pill: Take of *Tarre* three ſpoonfuls, of ſweet butter the like quantity, beat them well together with the powder of *Lyquoras*, *Anni-ſeeds* and *Sugar-candy*, til it be like paſte then make it into 3 round bals, and put into each bal two or three cloves of Garlick, and ſo give them unto the horſe, obſerving to warm him both before and after, and keep him faſting two or three hours likewiſe, both before and after.

The Cure.

## CHAP. XII.

### *Of the generall Cramp, or Convulſion of ſinewes.*

CRamp are taken to be the contracting or drawing together of the Sinewes, of any one member: but Convulſions are when the whole body, from the ſetting on of the head to the extreameſt parts are generaly contracted and ſtifned. The cure of either is, firſt to chaſe

The Cure.

and

and rub the member contracted with vinegar & common oyl, and then to wrap it all over with wet Hay, or rotten Litter, or elſe with wet woollen cloaths, either of which is a preſent Remedy.

## CHAP. 13.

### *Of any cough or cold whatſoever, wet or dry, or for any conſumption or putrifaction of the Lungs whatſoever.*

A Cold is got by unnaturall heats, and too ſuddain coolings, and theſe colds ingender coughs, and thoſe coughs, putrifaction or rottenneſſe of the Lungs. The cure therefore for them all in generall, is to take a handfull or two of the white and greeniſh moſſe which growes upon an old Oke pole, or any old Oke wood, and boyl it in a quart of milk till it be thick, and being cold turned to Jelly, then ſtrain it, and give it the Horſe lukewarme every morning till his cough end; or elſe take three quarters of an ounce of the conſerve of *Elicampane*, and diſſolve it in a pint of Sack, and lukewarm give it the Horſe faſting; then ride him after it, and let him up warm, feed as ordinary times; thus doe three mornings together.

## CHAP. 14.

### *Of the running Glaunders, or mourning of the chine.*

TAke of *Auripigmentum* two drams, of *Tuſſilaginis* made into powder as much, then mixing them together with Turpentine till they be like paſte, and making there of little cakes, dry them before the fire: then take a chafing-diſh and coales, and laying one or two of the cakes thereon, cover them with a tunnel, and then the ſmoke riſing, put the tunnel into the horſes noſtrils and let the ſmoake goe up into his head: which done

ride the horſe till he ſweat: do thus once every morning before he be watered, till the running at his noſtrills ceaſe, and the *kirnels* under his *chaps* wear away.

## CHAP. 15.

### *Of hide bound, of conſumption of the fleſh.*

HIde bound or conſumption of the fleſh, proceeeds from unreaſonable travail diſorderly dyet, & many ſurfeits. It is known by a general diſlike and leanneſs over the whole body, and by the ſticking of the skinne cloſe to the body, in ſuch ſort that it wil not riſe from the body. The cure is, firſt to let the horſe bloud, & then give him to drink three or four mornings together a quart of new milk, with two ſponfuls of hony, and one ounce of *London treacle*: then let his food be either ſodden barly, warm Grains and Salt, or beans ſpleted in a mill, his drink Maſhes.

The cure.

## CHAP. 16.

### *Of the breaſt pain, or any other ſickneſſe proceeding from the heart, as the Anticor and ſuch like.*

THeſe diſeaſes proceed from too rank feeding, and much fatneſſe: the ſigns are a faultring in his forelegs a diſableneſſe to bow down his neck, and a trembling over all his body. The cure is, to let him bloud, and give him three mornings together two ſpoonfuls of *Diapent* in a quart of Ale or Beer, for it alone putteth away all infect on from the heart.

The Cure.

## CHAP. 17.

### *Of tyred horſes.*

IF your horſe be tyred either in journying or any hunting match, your beſt help for him is to give him warm

warm urine to drink, & letting him bloud in the mouth to ſuffer him to lick up and ſwallow the ſame. Then if you can come where any netles are, to rub his mouth and ſheath wel therewith: then gently to Ride him untill you come to your reſting place, where ſet him up very warm; and before you go to bed, give him ſix ſpoonfuls of *Aqua vitæ* to drink, and as much provender as he will eat. The next morning rub his legs with ſheeps foot oyl, and it will bring freſh nimblenes unto his ſinews.

## CHAP. 18.

### *Of diſeaſes in the ſtomack, as ſurfeits, loathing of meat or drink, or ſuch like,*

IF your horſe with the glut of provender, or eating raw food, have given ſuch offence to his ſtomack that he caſteth up al he eateth or drinketh, you ſhall firſt give him a comfortable drench, as *Diapente*, or *Treaphamicon* in Ale or beer; & then keeping him faſting, let him have no food but what he eateth out of your hand which would be bread well bakt and old, and after every two or three bits a lock of ſweet hay: and his drink would be onely new milk till his ſtomack have gotten ſtrength, and in a bag you ſhal commonly hang at his noſe ſowr-broun bread ſteept in vinegar, at which he muſt ever ſmell, and his ſtomack wil quickly come again to his firſt ſtrength.

## CHAP. 19.

### *Of foundring in the body.*

FOundring in the body is of ſurfeits the morralleſt and ſooneſt gotten: it proceedeth from intemperate riding a horſe when he is fat, & then ſudainly ſuffering

him to take cold; then washing a fat horse there is nothing sooner bringeth this infirmity. The signs are sadnesse of countenance, staring hair, stiffnesse of limb, and losse of belly: and the cure is only to give him wholesome strong meat, as bread of clean beanes, and warm drink, and for two or three mornings together a quart of Ale brewed with Pepper, and Cinamon and an ounce of *London-treacle*.

The cure.

## CHAP. 20.

### *Of the hungry evill.*

THe Hungry evill is an unnaturall and over-hasty greedines in a horse to devour his meat faster then he can chew it, and is only known by his greedy snatching at his meat, as if he would devour it whole: the cure is, to give him to drink milk and wheat-meal mixt together by a quart at a time, and to feed him with provender by a little and a little till he forsake it.

The Cure.

## CHAP. 21.

### *Of the diseases of the Liver, as inflamations, obstructions, and consumptions.*

THe Liver, which is the vessell of blood, is subject to many diseases, according to the distemperature of the blood, and the signs to know it, is a stinking breath, and a mutual looking towards his body: and the cure is to take *Aristilochia longa*, & boyl it in running water, till the half part be consumed, and let the horse drink continually thereof, and it will cure all evils about the Liver, or any inward conduits of blood.

The Cure.

## CHAP. 22.

### *Of the diseases of the Gall and especially of the Yellowes.*

FRom the overflowing of the Gal, or rather want of the Gal, which is the vessel of choller, spring many

mortall

mortal diſeaſes, eſpecially the Yellows, which is an extream faint mortal ſickneſſe, if it be not prevented betime: the ſigns are yellowneſſe of the eies and skin, and chiefly underneath his upper lip next unto his foreteeth, a ſudden & faint falling down by the high way, or in the ſtable, & an univerſal ſweat over al the body: the cure is, firſt to let the horſe blood in the neck, in the mouth, and under the eies; then take two penny-worth of *Saffron*, which being dried and made into fine powder, mixe it with ſweet Butter, and in manner of a pill give it in balls to the horſe, three mornings together, let his drink be warm, and his hay ſprinkled with water: A quart of ſtrong decoction of *Salladine* helps it alſo. The Cure.

## CHAP. XXIII.

### *Of the ſickneſſe of the ſpleen.*

THe Spleen which is the veſſel of Melancholly, when it is overcharged therewith, grows painfull, hard, and great, in ſuch ſort, that ſometimes it is viſible. The ſigns to know it, is much groaning, haſty feeding, and a continuall looking to his left ſide only. The cure is, take *Agrimony*, and boil a good quantity of it in the water, which the horſe ſhall drink, and chopping the leaves ſmall, mixe them very well with ſweet *May-butter*, and give the horſe two or three good round balls thereof, in the manner of Pills. The Cure.

## CHAP. XXIIII.

### *Of the dropſie or evill habit of the body,*

THe Dropſie is that evill habit of the body, which ingendred by ſurfeits & unreaſonable labour, altereth the colours & complexions of horſes, & changeth the

hairs, in ſuch an unnaturall ſort, that a man ſhall not know the Beaſt, with which he hath been moſt familiar.

The Cure. The cure is to take a handfull or two of *Wormwood*, and boyling it in Ale or Beer a quart or better, give it the horſe to drink luke-warm, morning and evening, and let him only drink his water at noon time of the day.

## CHAP. XXV.

### *Of the Collick, Belly-ake, and Belly-bound.*

THe Collick or Belly-ake, is a fretting or gnawing or ſwelling of the Belly, or great bag, proceeding from windie humors, or from eating of green corn or pulſe, hot grains without Salt or labour, or bread dow-bak't: and Belly-bound is, when a horſe cannot dung. The cure

The Cure. of the Chollick or Belly-ake, is, to take good ſtore of the herb *Dill*, and boile it in the water you give your horſe to drink, but if he cannot dung, then you ſhall boil in his water good ſtore of the herb called *Fengreek* and it will make him looſe without danger or hurting.

## CHAP. XXVI.

### *Of the Laxe or Bloudy-Flixe.*

THe Laxe or Bloody-flix, is an unnaturall looſeneſſe in a horſes body, which not being ſtayed, will for

The Cure. want of other excrement make a horſe void bloud only. The cure is, take a handful of the herb *Shepherds-purſe*, and boil it in a quart of ſtrong Ale, and when it is luke-warm take the ſeed of the herb *Wood-roſe* ſtampt, and put it therein, and give it the horſe to drink.

Chap.

## CHAP. XXVII.

### *Of the falling of the fundament.*

THis commeth through miſlike and weaknes, and the cure is: Take *Town creſſes*, and having dried them to powder, with your hand put up the Fundament, and then ſtrow the powder thereon, after it lay a little hony thereon, and then ſtrow more of the powder, mixt with the powder of *Commin*, and it helpeth. The Cure.

## CHAP. XXVIII.

### *Of Bots and Wormes of all ſorts.*

THe Bots & gnawing of worms, is a grievous pain, & the ſigns to know them, is the horſes oft beating his belly, and tumbling and wallowing on the ground, with much deſire to lie on his back. The cure is, take the leaves chopt of the herb *Saven*, & mixe it with *hony* and *butter*, and making two or three bals thereof, make the horſe ſwallow them down, and it will help him. The Cure.

## CHAP. XXIX.

### *Of the pain in the Kidneys, pain piſſe, or the ſtone.*

ALL theſe diſeaſes ſpring from one grous, which is only gravel and hard matter gathered together in the Kidneys, and ſo ſtopping the conduits of Urine: the ſignes are only that the horſe wil oft ſtrain to piſſe, but cannot. The cure is, to take a handfull of *Maiden-hair* and ſteep it all night in a quart of ſtrong Ale, and give it the horſe to drink every morning till he be well: this will break any ſtone whatſoever in a horſe. The Cure.

## CHAP. XXX.

### *Of the Strangullion.*

THis is a ſoreneſſe in the horſes yard, and a hot burning ſmarting when he piſſeth: the ſignes are, hee

The Cure, wil piſſe oft, yet but a drop or two at once. The cure is, to boil in the water which he drinketh, good ſtore of the herb *Mayth*, or *Hogs-fennel*, and it will cure him.

## CHAP. XXXI.

### *Of piſſing bloud.*

THis commeth with over travelling a horſe, or travelling a horſe ſore in the winter, when he goeth
The Cure, to graſſe: the cure is, take *Ariſtolochia-longa*, a handfull, and boil it in a quart of Ale, and give it the horſe to drink luke-warm, and give him alſo reſt.

## CHAP. XXXII.

### *Of the Colt-evill, mattering of the yard, falling of the yard, ſhedding the Seed.*

ALL theſe evils proceed from much luſt in a horſe:
The Cure, and the cure is, the powder of the herb *Avit*, and the leaves of *Bettony*; ſtamp them with white wine to a moiſt ſalve, and annoint the ſore therewith, and it wil heal all imperfection in the yard: but if the horſe ſhed his ſeed, then beat *Venice*, *Turpentine*, & *Sugar* together, and give him every morning a good round ball thereof, untill the fluxe ſtay.

## CHAP. XXXIII.

### *Of the particular diſeaſes in Mares, barrennes, conſumption, rage of love, caſting Foals, hardneſſe to foal, and how to make a Mare caſt her Foal.*

IF you have your Mare barren, let good ſtore of the herb *Agnuscaſtus* be boil'd in the water ſhe drinketh, if you would have her fruitfull then boyl good ſtore of *Mother wort* in the water which ſhe drinketh: If ſhe loſe her belly, which ſheweth a conſumption of the womb,

womb, you ſhal then give her a quart of Brine to drink, *Mugwort* being boiled therein. If your Mare through pride of keeping, grow into too extream luſt, ſo that ſhe wil neglect her food, through the violence of her fleſhly appetite, as it is often ſeen amongſt them, you ſhall houſe her for two or three daies, and give her every morning a bal of Butter & *Agnus caſtus* chopt together if you would have your Mare caſt a Foal, take a handfull of *Dettony*, and boil it in a quart of Ale, and it wil deliver her preſently. If ſhe cannot Foal, take the herb *Horſe mint*, and either drie it or ſtamp it, and take the powder, or the juyce, and mixe it with ſtrong Ale, and give it the Mare, and it wil help her. If your Mare from former bruiſings or ſtrokes be apt to caſt her Foals, as many are, you ſhall keep her at graſſe very warm, and once in a week give her a good warm maſh of drink; this ſecretly knitteth beyond expectation.

## CHAP. XXXIIII.

*Of drinking venom, as horſeleaches, hens dung or ſuch like.*

IF your horſe have drunk Horſe-leaches, Hens-dung, feathers, or ſuch like venemous thing, which you ſhal know by his panting, ſwelling, or ſcouring, you ſhall take the herb *Sowthiſtle*, and drying it, beat it into powder, and put three ſpoonfuls thereof in a quart of Ale, and give it the Horſe to drink.

## CHAP. XXXV.

*Of Suppoſitaries, Clyſters, and Purgations.*

IF your horſe by ſickne, ſtrict dyet, or too vehement travel grow dry and coſtive in his body, as is ordinary, the eaſieſt means in extremity to help him, is to give him

him a ſuppoſitary; the beſt of which is, to take a candle of four in the pound, and cut off five inches at the bigger end, and thruſting it up a good way with your hand into his fundament, preſently clap downe his taile, and hold it hard to his tuell a quarter of an hour, or half an hour, and then give him liberty to dung: but if this be not ſtrong enough, then you ſhall give him a Clyſter, and that is, take foure handfulls of the herb Aniſe, and boile it in a pottle of running water, till half be conſumed, then take the decoction, and mixe it with a pint of ſallet oyl, and a pretty quantity of ſalt, and with a clyſter-pipe, give it him at his tuel. But if this be too weak, then give him a purgation thus, take twenty raiſins of the ſunne without ſtones, and ten figs ſlit, boile them in a pottle of running water, till it come to a gelly, then mixe it with the powder of Liquoras, Aniſe-ſeeds, and Sugar-candy; til it be like paſte, then make it into bals, and role it in ſweet butter, and ſugar, and ſo give it the horſe, to the quantity of three hen egges.

## CHAP. XXXVI.

### *Of Neeſings and Friction.*

THere be other two excellent helps for ſick horſes, as Frictions, and Neeſings: the firſt to comfort the outward parts of the body, when the vital powers are aſtoniſhed; the other to purge the head, when it is ſtopt with Phlegme, cold, or other thick humours. And of Frictions, the beſt is Vinegar and Patchgreaſe, melted together, and very hot chafed into the horſes body againſt the hair. And to make a horſe neeſe there is nothing better then to take a bunch of Pellitory of Spain, and binding it to a ſtick, thruſt it up into a horſes noſtrils, and it wil make him neeſe without hurt or violence.

CHAP.

## CHAP. XXXVII.

*Of diseases in the eyes: as watry-eyes, blood-shotten-eyes, dim-eyes, moon-eyes, stroke in the eye, wart in the eye, inflammation in the eye, pearl, pin, web, or haw.*

UNto the eye belongeth many diseases, all which have their true signes in their names: and as touching that which is watry, bloud-shotten, dim, moone, stricken, or inflamed, they have al one cure. The cure is, take wormwood, and beat it in a mortar with the gal of a Bull, straine it, and anoynt the horses eyes therewith, ard it is an approved remedy. But for the wart, pearle, pin, or web, which are evills growne in and upon the eye, to take them off, take the juyce of the herb Betin, and wash the eye therewith, and it will wear the spots away, for the haw every Smith can cut it out. The Cure.

## CHAP. XXXVIII.

*Of the Imposthume in the ear, Pole-evill, Fistula, swelling after bloud-letting, any gald back, canker in the withers, fit-fast, wens, navell-gall, or any hollow ulcer.*

THese diseases are so apparent and common that they need no further discriptiō but their names, and the most certain cure is, to take clay of a mud or lome wall, without lime, the straws and all, and boyling it in strong Vinegar, apply it plaister-wise to the sore, and it will of its own nature search to the bottome and heal it: provided that if you see any dead or proud flesh to arise, that then you either eat or cut it away. The Cure.

## CHAP. XXXIX.

*Of the Vives.*

FOr the Vives, which is an inflammatiō of the kirnels between the chap and the neck of the horse: take

Pepper

*Pepper* one penny worth, of ſwines greaſe on ſpoonful, the juyce of a handfull of *Rew*, *Vinegar*, two ſpoonfuls, mixe them together, and then put it equally into both the horſes ears, and then tie them up with two flat laces, then ſhake the ears, that the medicine may go down, which done, let the horſe blood in the neck, and in the temple veines, and it is a certain cure.

## CHAP. XL.

### *Of the ſtrangle, or any Bile, Botch, or other Impoſtume whatſoever.*

ALL theſe diſeaſes are of one nature, being only hard biles or impoſtumes, gathered together by evil humours, either between the chaps, or elſewhere on the body. The cure is, take *Southernwood*, and dry it to powder, and with *Barly meal*, and the yolk of an Egge, make it into a ſalve, and lay it to the impoſtume, and it will ripen it, break it, and heal it.

The Cure.

## CHAP. XLI.

### *Of the Canker in the noſe, or any other part of the body.*

TO heal any Canker in what part ſoever it be: take the juice of *Plantain*, as much *Vinegar*, & the ſame weight of the powder of *Allom*, and with it annoynt the ſore twice or thrice a day, and it wil kill it, and cure it.

The Cure.

## CHAP. XLII.

### *Of ſtanching of blood, whether it be at the Noſe, or proceed from any wound.*

IF your horſe bleed violently at the noſe, and wil not be ſtaid then you ſhall take *Bettony*, and ſtamp it in a mortar with bay ſalt, or other white-ſalt & ſtop it into the horſes noſe, or apply it to the wound, & it wil ſtanch it:

it: but if you be sudenly taken, as riding by the high way or otherwise, and cannot get this herb, you shall then take any wollen cloth, or any felt hay, and with a knife scrape a fine Lint from it, and apply it to the bleeding place, and it will stanch it presently.

## CHAP. 43.

### *Of the diseases in the mouth, as bloudy rifts, Ligs, Lampas Camery, inflammation, tongue-hurt, or the Barbs.*

IF you find any infirmity in your horses mouth, as the bloudy rifts, which are chaps or rifts in the palate of the horses mouth; the jigs, which a little pustels or bladders within the horses lips: the Lampasse, which is an excression of flesh above the teeth: the Camery, which is little warts in the roof of the mouth, inflamation which is blisters: barbs, which are two little paps under the tongue or any hurt on the tongue by bit or otherwise: you shal take the leavs of *wormwood*, & the leaves of *Shirtwit*, and beat them in a morter with a little hony, and with it annoint the sores, and it will heal them, as for the Lampasse, they must be burnt away, which the ignorantest Smith can easily do. The cure.

## CHAP. 44.

### *Of pain in the teeth, or loose teeth.*

FOr any pain in the teeth, take Bettony and seeth it in Ale or vinegar til a half part be consumed, & wash all the gums therewith: but if they be loose, then only rub them with the leaves of *Elecompane* or *Horsechelm* after they have been let blood, and it will fasten them.

## CHAP. 45.

### *Of the Crick in the neck.*

FOr the Crick in the neck, you shal first chafe it with the Friction before specified, and then annoint and

bath it with ſope and vinegar, boyled together.

## CHAP. 46.

### *Of the falling in the Creſt, mangineſſe in the maine, or ſhedding of the hair.*

ALL theſe diſeaſes proceed from poverty, miſlike, or over riding, and the beſt cure of the falling of the Creſt, is bloud-letting, and proud keeping, with ſtore of meat for ſtrength and fatneſſe ever will raiſe up the Creſt, but if the main be mangy, you ſhall annoint it with Butter, and Brimſtone, and if the hair fall away, then take *Southernwood*, and burn it to aſhes, then take thoſe aſhes, and mixing them with common oyle, annoint the place therewith, and it will bring hair preſently, ſmooth, thick, and fair.

## CHAP. 47.

### *Of pain in the withers.*

A Horſes withers are ſubject to many griefs and ſwellings, which proceed from cold humours, ſometimes from evill ſaddles, therefore if at any time you ſee any ſwelling about them, you ſhal take the herb *Hearts-tongue*, and boil it with the oil of *Roſes*, and very hot apply it to the ſore, and it will aſſwage it, or elſe break it and heal it.

## CHAP. 48.

### *Of ſwaying the back, or weakneſſe in the backe.*

THeſe two infirmities are dangerous, and may be eaſed, but never abſolutely cured, therefore where you find them, take Colworts and boyle them in oyle, and mixing them in a little bean meal charge the back, and it will ſtrengthen it.

CHAP.

## CHAP. 49.

### *Of the Itch in the tail, or of the generall Scab and manginesſe, or of the Farcie.*

FOr any of theſe diſeaſes, take freſh greaſe, & yellow *Arſnick*, mixe them together, and where the Manginesſe or Itch is, there rub it hard in, the ſore being made raw: but if it be for Farcie, then with a knife ſlit all the knots, both hard and ſoft, and then rub in the medicine: which done, tie up the Horſe, ſo as he may not come to bite himſelf, and then after he hath ſtood two or three hours, take old piſſe and ſalt boyld together, provided always that you firſt let him bloud, and take good ſtore from him, and alſo give him every morning a ſtrong ſcouring, or a ſtrong purge, both which are ſhewed before.

## CHAP. 50.

### *Of any halting which commeth by ſtraine, or ſtroke, either before or behind, from the ſhoulder or hippe down to the hoofe.*

THere be many infirmities which make a Horſe halt, as pinching the ſhoulder, wrench in the ſhoulder, wrench in the neather joynt, ſplatting the ſhoulder, ſhoulder pight, ſtrayns in joynts, & ſuch like, all which, ſince they happen by one accident, as namely, by the violence of ſome ſlip or ſtrain, they may be cured by one medicine, & it is thus. After you have found where the grief is, as you may do by griping and pinching every ſeveral member, then where he moſt complaineth, there is his moſt grief. You ſhall take if the ſtrain be new) Vinegar, *Bolearmoniake*, the whites of Eggs and beane-

flower,

flower, and having beaten them to a perfect salve, lay them very hot to the sore place, and it wil cure it, but if the strain be old, then take vinegar and butter, and melting them together with wheat bran, make it into pultis, and lay it to the sore as hot as may be, and it wil without doubt take away the grief.

## CHAP. 51.

### *Of foundring in the feet*

OF foundring there be two sorts, a dry & a wet: the dry Foundring is incurable, the wet is thus to be helpt. First pare al the soals of his feet so thin, that you may see the quick, then let him blood at every toe, and let them bleed wel, then stop the vein with tallow, and Rosen, and having tackt hollow shooes on his feet, stop them with bran, tarre, and tallow, as boyling hot as may be, and renue it once in two dayes, for a week together, then exercise him much, and his feet will come to their true use and nimblenesse.

## CHAP. 52.

### *Of the Splent, curbe, Bone-spaven, or any knobbie or bony excression or Ring-bone.*

A Splent is a bony excression under the knee or the fore-leg, the Curbe is the like behind the hinder hough, the Spavin is the like on the inside of the hinder hough, and the Ringbone is the like on the cronet of the hoofe. And the cure is, first upon the top of the excression, make a slit with your knife the length of a Barly-corn, or a little more, and then with a fine cornet raise the skin from the bone, and having made it, hollow the compasse of the excression, and no more, take a little lint, & dip it into the oyl of *Origanum*, and thrust it into the

the hole and cover the knob, and ſo let it bridle till you ſee it rot, and that Nature caſteth out both the medicine and the core. As for the Ring-bone you ſhall need to ſcarifie and annoint it with the oyle only.

## CHAP. 53.

### *Of the Malander, Selander, Pains, Scratches, mellet, mules; Crown-ſcabs, and ſuch like.*

FOr any of theſe Sorrances, you ſhall take verdigreaſe and ſoft greaſe, and grinding them together to an oyntment, put it in a box by it ſelf; then take wax, Hogs-greaſe, and Turpentine, of each alike, and being melted together, put that ſalve into another Box: then when you come to dreſſe the ſore, after you have taken off the ſcab, and made it raw, you ſhall annoint it with your green ſalve of *Verdigreaſe* & freſh greaſe only for two or three days; it is a ſharpe ſalve, and will kill the cankerous humour: then when you ſee the ſore look fair, you ſhall take two parts of the yellow ſalve, and one part of the green ſalve, and mixing them together, annoint the ſore therewith till it be whole, making it ſtronger or weaker as you ſhall find occaſion.

## CAAP. 54.

### *Of an upper Attaint, or nether Attaint, or any hurt by over-reaching.*

THeſe attaints are ſtrokes or cuts by over-reaching either on the back ſinew of the fore-legge, on the heels or nether joynts, and may be ſafely healed by the ſame former medicine and meane which healeth the *Mallander*, or *Selander*, in the former *chapter*, onely for your over-reaches, *you ſhall before you apply your ſalve lay the ſore plain and open, without hollownesse*, and

wash it with beere and salt, or vinegar and salt.

## CHAP. 55.

### *Of the infirmity of hoofes, as false quarters, loose hoofes, casting hoofes, hoofe bound, hoof-running, hoof-brittle, hoofe-hurt, hoofe-soft, hoof-hard, or generally to preserve hoofes.*

THe hoof is subject to many miseries: as first to false quarters, which commeth by pricking, and must be helpt by good shooing, where the shooe must bear on ever part of the foot but upon the false quarters onely. If the hoof be loose, annoint it with pitch of *burgundy* and it will knit it: if it be clean cast off, then pitch of *burgundy* and tallow molten together, wil bring a new if it be bound or strained, it must be very wel opened at the heels, the soal kept moist, and the cronet annointed with the fat of bacon and tarre. If the frush of the feet run with stinking matter, it must be stopt with Soot, Turpentine, and *Bolearmoniake* mixt together: if it be brittle or broken, then annoint it with pitch and Linseed oyl, molten to a soft salve; if it be soft, then stop it with Sope, and the ashes of a burnt felt mixt together: if the hooses be hard, lay hot burning Cinders upon them, and then stop them with tow and tallow: and generally for the preserving of all good hoofs, annoint them daily with the sward or rind of fat bacon.

## CHAP. 56.

### *Of the blood-spaven, or hough-bony, or any other unnatural swelling, from what cause soever it proceedeth*

THese two sorrances or pustels, or soft round swellings, the first on the inside of the hinder hough, & the other on the very huckle of the hough behind, they

are

are ſoft and very ſore, and the cure is: Firſt to take up the vein above, and let it bleed only from below, then having knit it faſt with two ſhooe-makers ends on both ſides the ſlit, cut the vein in two pieces: then take Linſeed, and bruiſe it in a morter, then mixe it with Cowdung, and heat it in a frying pan, and ſo apply it to the ſwelling only, and if it break and run, then heal it with a plaiſter of pitch, and the horſe ſhal never be troubled with Spaven more: but if the ſwelling come by ſtraine or bruiſe, then take patch-greaſe, and melting it, annoint the ſore therewith, holding a hot Iron neere it to ſinke in the greaſe, then fold a linnen cloath about it, and it will aſſwage all ſwellings whatſoever. The cure.

## CHAP. 57.

### *Of Wind-Galls.*

THeſe are little blebs or ſoft ſwellings on each ſide the Fetlock, procured by much travaile on hard and ſtony wayes. The cure is to prick them, and to let out the jelly, and then dry up the ſore with a playſter of pitch. The cure.

## CHAP. 58.

### *Of Enterfairing or Shackle-gall, or any gallings.*

ENterfairing is hewing one leg on another, and ſtriking off the skin, it proceedeth from weakneſſe or ſtraightneſſe of the horſes pace, and Shackle-gall is any gall underneath the Fetlock. The cure is, to annoint them with Turpentine and Verdigreaſe mixt together, or Turpentine alone, if it rankle not too much. The cure.

## CHAP. 59.

### *Hurts on the Cronet, as the quitter-bone, or Matlong.*

THe Quitterbone is a hollow ulcer on the top of the cronet, and ſo is the Matlong, and the cure is: Firſt

to taint it with Verdigreaſe untill you have eaten out the core, and made the wound very clean: then you ſhall heal it up with the ſame ſalves that you heale the Scratches.

The Cure.

## CHAP. 60.

### *Of wounds in the foot, as gravelling, pricking, figge, retait, or cloying.*

IF your Horſe have any wound in his foot by what miſchance ſoever, you ſhal firſt ſearch it, and ſee that it be clear of any nayl point, or other ſplent to annoy it, then waſh it very well with white wine and ſalt, and after taint it with the oyntment called *Egyptiacum*, and then lay hote upon the taint with *Flaxe hurds*, *Turpentine*, *Oyle* and *VVaxe* mingled together, and annoint all the top of the hoof and cronet with *Bolearmoniake* and *Vinegar*: do this once a day untill the ſore be whole.

## CHAP. 61.

### *To draw out a Stub or Thorn.*

TAke the herb *Detany*, and bruiſe it in a morter with *black ſope*, and lay it to the ſore, and it will draw out the ſplent, iron, thorn, or ſtub.

## CHAP. 62.

### *Of the Aubury or Tetter.*

THe *Aubury* is a bloudy wart on any part of the horſes body, and the Tetter is a cankerous ulcer like it: the cure of both is with an hote Iron to ſeare the one plain to the body, and to ſcarifie the other; then take the juyce of *Plantain*, and mixe it with *Vinegar*, *Honey*, *and the powder of Allom*, and with it annoint the Sore till it be whole.

the cure.

CHAP

## CHAP. 63.

### *Of the Cords or string halt.*

THis is an unnaturall binding of the sinews; which imperfection, a horse bringeth into the world with him: and therefore it is certain it is incurable, and not painfull, but onely an eye sore, yet the best way to keep it from worse inconvenience, is to bathe his limbs in the decoction of *Coleworts*.

## CHAP. 64.

### *Of spur-galling, or fretting the skinne, and hair.*

FOr this there is nothing better then pisse and Salt, with which wash the sore dayly.

## CHAP. 65.

### *Of healing any old sore or wound.*

FResh Butter, and the hearbe *Ameos* chopt and beaten together to a salve will heal any wound, or any old sore.

## CHAP. 66.

### *Of sinews being cut.*

IF the Horses sinews be cut, take the leaves of wild *Nepe* or *Woodbine*, and beating them in a morter with *May* butter, apply it to the sore, and it will knit the sinews.

## CHAP. 67.

### *Of eating away dead flesh.*

TAke *Stubwort*, and lap it in a red dock leaf, and rost it in the hot Cinders, and lay it to the sore, and it wil eat away any dead flesh. So wil Verdigrease, burnt Allome, or Lime. The Cure.

## CHAP. 68.

### *Of knots in the joynts.*

PAtch-greaſe applied as is before ſhewed for ſwellings, will take away any hard knots in the fleſh, or upon the ſinews.

## CHAP. 69.

### *Of venemous wounds, as biting with a mad Dog, tuſks of Bores, Serpents, or ſuch like.*

FOr any of theſe mortall or venemous wounds, take *Yarrow, calamint*, and the grains of wheat, and beat them in a morter with water of *Southernwood*, and make it into a ſalve, and lay it to the ſore, and it will heale it ſafely.

## CHAP. 70.

### *Of Lice or Nits.*

THis filthineſſe of Vermine is bred in a horſe through unnaturall diſlike and poverty: the cure is, take the juyce of *Beets* and *Staveſaker* beaten together, and with it annoint the Horſes body over, and it will make him clean.

The cure.

## CHAP. 71.

### *Of defending a Horſe from Flyes.*

TAke the juyce of *Pellitory* of *Spain*, and mixing it with milk, annoint the horſes belly therewith, and no flyes will trouble him.

## CHAP. 72.

### *Of broken bones, or bones out of joynt.*

AFter you have placed the bones in their true places, take the *Fern-oſmund*, and beat it in a morter with the oyl of *Swallows*, and annoint all the member, then ſplent it and role it up, and in fifteen dayes, the bones will knit and be ſtrong.

CHAP.

## CHAP. 73.

*Of drying up ſores when they be almoſt whole.*

ALlome burnt, unſleekt Lime, the aſhes of an old ſhooe-ſole burnt, or Oyſter-ſhels burnt, any of theſe ſimply by themſelves, wil dry up any ſore, though never ſo moyſt.

## CHAP. 74.

*A moſt famous receit to make a horſe that is lean, and full of inward ſickneſſe, ſound and fat in fourteene dayes having been often approved of.*

TAke of wheat meal ſix pound, Anniſeeds two ounces, Commin-ſeeds ſixe drams, Carthamus one dram and a half, Fenne-greeke-ſeeds one ounce two drams, Brimſtone one ounce and a half, Sallet oyle one pint, honey one pound and a half, white wine four pints: this muſt be made into paſt, the hard ſimples being pounded into powder, and finely ſearſt, and then kneaded together, and ſo made into bals as big as a mans fiſt, then every watering conſume one of thoſe bals into his cold water, which he drinketh for morning and evening for fifteen days together, and if at the firſt he be dainty to drink the water, yet care not, but let him faſt till he drink it, and after he begins to take it, he will drink it with great greedineſſe.

## CHAP. 75.

*How to make a white Starre.*

SLit the horſes fore-head the length of your ſtarre, and then raiſe the skinne up with a cornet, and put in a plate of Lead as bigge as the Starre, and let it remain ſo two or three days together; and then let it out and preſſe down the skin with your hand, and that haire

will fall away, and white will come in the place: or to ſcald the face or skinne with a ſower apple roſted, will bring white hair: But to make a black ſtarre, or a red ſtarre in a horſes fore-head. I refer it for you to looke and approve of my *Maſter-peece*, which belongeth onely to that for to be exactly diſcourſed of, that being onely a generall cure of all Cattle.

*The end of the Horſe.*

## The generall Cure and Ordering of the Bull, Cow, Calfe, or Oxe

### CHAP. 1.

*Of the Bull, Cow, Calfe, or Oxe, their ſhape, and breed, uſe, choice, and preſervation.*

FOr as much the Male of all Creatures are the principall in the breed and generation of things, and that the fruit which iſſueth from their Seede, participateth moſt with their outward ſhapes, and inward qualities, I think fitteſt in this place, where I intend to treat of Horned-cattle and Neat, to ſpeake firſt of the choyce of a fair Bull, being the breeders principalleſt inſtrument of profit. You ſhall underſtand then, that of our Engliſh cattle (for I will not ſpeak of thoſe in *Italy*, and other forreign countries, as other Authors do, and forget mine owne) the beſt are bred in *York-ſhire*, *Darby-ſhire*, *Lancaſhire*, *Stafford-ſhire*, *Lincoln-ſhire*, *Gloſter-ſhire*, and *Somerſet-ſhire*, though they which are bred in *Yorke-ſhire*, *Darby-ſhire*, *Lanca-ſhire*, and *Stafford-ſhire*, are generally all black of colour, and

The countries for breed.

though

though they whose blackneſſe is pureſt, and their hairs like velvet, are eſteemed beſt; they have exceeding large horns, and very white, with black tippes; they are of ſtately ſhape, bigge, round and wel huckled together in every member, ſhort joynted, and moſt comely to the eye, ſo that they are eſteemed excellent in the market: thoſe in *Lincolnſhire* are the moſt part Pide with more white then the other colours, their horn, little and crooked, of bodies exceeding tall, long and large, leane and thin thighed ſtrong hooved, not apt to ſurbait, and are indeed fitteſt for labour and draught. Thoſe in *Somerſetſhire* and *Gloceſter-ſhire*, are generally of a blood red colour, in all ſhapes like unto thoſe in *Lincoln-ſhire* and fitteſt for their uſes. Now to mixe a race of theſe and the black ones together is not good, for their ſhapes and colours are ſo contrary, that their iſſue are very uncomely: therefore I would wiſh all men to make their breeds either ſimply from one and the ſame kind, or elſe to mixe *York-ſhire* with *Stafford-ſhire*, with *Lancaſhire*, or *Darby-ſhire* with one of the black races, and ſo likewiſe *Lincolnſhire* with *Somerſet-ſhire*, or *Somerſet-ſhire* with *Gloceſterſhire*,

Of not mixing and mixing of races.

Now for the ſhape of your bull; he would be of a ſharp and quick countenance, his horns the larger the better, his neck fleſhy, his belly long and large, his forehead broad and curled, his eys black and large, his ears rough within, and hair like velvet, his muzzel large and broad at the upper lip, but narrow and ſmal at the nether, his noſtril crooked within, yet wide and open, his dew-lap extending from his nether lip down to is foreboothes, large, ſide, thinne and hairy, his breaſt rough and bigge his ſhoulders large, broad, and deep his ribs broad and wide, his back ſtraight and flat, even to the ſetting

The ſhape of the Bull.

setting on of his tayl, which would ſtand high, his huckle-bones round and fair appearing, making his buttocks ſqare, his thighs round, his legs ſtraight & ſhort joynted; his knees round and big, his hoovs or claws long and hollow, his tayl long and buſh-haired, and his pyzell round, & alſo wel haired. Theſe buls as they are for breed, ſo they are excellently good for the draught, onely the naturally draw better ſingle, like horſes, then in the yoak, like Oxen: the reaſon as I ſuppoſe being, becauſe they can hardly be matcht in an equall manner.

*The uſe of the Bull.*

Now for the Cow, you ſhall chuſe her of the ſame Country with your Bull, and as near as may be of one colour, only her bag or udder would ever be white, with four teats and no more, her belly would be round and large, her forehead broad and ſmooth, and al her other parts ſuchas are before ſhewed in the male kind.

*Of the Cow, & her ſhape.*

The uſe of the Cow is to fold, either for the Dary, or for breed: the red Cow giveth the beſt milk, and the black Cow bringeth forth the goodlieſt Calf. The yeng Cow is the beſt for breed, yet the indifferent old are not to be refuſed. That Cow which giveth milk longeſt is beſt for both purpoſes, for ſhe which goes long drie looſeth half her profit, and is leſſe fit for teeming: for commonly they are ſubject to feed, and that ſtraineth the womb or matrix.

*Of her uſe.*

Now for calves: there are two ways of breeding them the one to let them run with their Dams all the yeer, which is beſt, & maketh the goodlieſt beaſt: the other, to take them from their dams, after their firſt ſucking and ſo bring them upon the finger, with flotten milk, the cold onely being taken away and no more; for to give a young Calfe hot milk his preſent death, or very dangerous. If your calf be calved in the five days after the

*Of Calves, and their nouriſhing.*

*Obſervations*

the change, which is called the *Prime*, do not rear it, for moſt aſſuredly it will have the Sturdy, therefore preſerve it only for the Butcher; alſo when you have preſerved thoſe male calves, which ſhall be Buls, then geld the reſt for Oxen, and the younger they are gelt the better: the beſt time for rearing of calves is from *Michaelmas* till *Candlemas*. A Calfe would be nouriſhed with milk twelve weeks, only a fortnight before you wean it from milk, let the milk be mixt with water. After your Calf hath drunk one moneth, you ſhall take the fineſt, ſweeteſt, and ſofteſt hay you can get, and putting little wiſps into cloven ſtickes, place them ſo as the Calf may come to them and learn to eat Hay. After our *Ladies* day when the weather is faire, you may turn your Calves to graſſe, but by no meanes let it be ranke, but ſhort and ſweet, ſo that they may get it with ſome labour.

Of the Oxe, and his uſe.

Now of the Oxe: you ſhall underſtand that the larger are the beſt and moſt profitable, both for draught or feeding, for he is the ſtrongeſt to indure labour, and beſt able to contain both fleſh and tallow. Now for his ſhape it differeth nothing from that of the Bull, only his face would be ſmooth, and his belly deeper. That Oxe is fitteſt for the yoak which is of gentleſt nature, and moſt familiar with the man. In matching your oxen for the yoak, let them as near as may be, be of one height, ſpirit, and ſtrength, for the ſtronger will ever wrong the weaker, and the duller will injure him that is of free ſpirit, except the driver be careful to keep the dull Oxe to his labour. Oxen for the yoak would by no means be put beyond their ordinary pace: for violence in travail heat them, heat breeds ſurfeit, and ſurfeit thoſe diſeaſes which makes them unapt to feed, or for any other uſe of goodneſſe.

Of his food for labour

goodneſſe. Your Oxe for the yoak will labour well with Barly ſtraw, or Peaſe ſtraw, and for blend fodder which is Hay and ſtraw mixed togeather, he will deſire no better feeding.

Oxen to ſee for the Butcher.

Now for your Oxe to feed, hee would as much as might be, be ever of luſty and young yeers, or if old yet healthfull & bruiſed, which you ſhal know by a good tail, and a good pyzell, for if the hair of one or both be loſt, then he is a waſter & he wil be long in feeding. If you do ſee the Oxe doth lick himſelf all over, it is a good ſigne that he is market-able and will feed, for it ſhews foundneſſe, & that the beaſt taketh a joy in himſelf: yet whilſt he doth ſo lick himſelf he feedeth not, for his own pride hindreth him, and therefore the husbandman wil lay the Oxes own dung upon his hide, which will make him leave licking & fall to his food. Now if you go to chuſe a fat beaſt, you ſhall handle his hindmoſt rib, and if it be ſoft and looſe, like down, then it ſhews the Oxe is outwardly wel fed; ſo doth ſoft huckle bones, and a big nach round and knotty: if his cod be big and ful, it ſhews he is wel tallowed, and ſo doth the crop behind the ſhoulders: if it be a Cow, then handle her navell, and if that be big, round & ſoft, ſurely ſhe is well tallowed. Many other obſervations there are, but they be ſo well known, and common in every mans vſe, that they need no curious demonſtration.

To preſerve Cattell in health.

Now for the preſervation of theſe cattell in good and perfect health. It ſhal be meet that for the young and luſty, and indeed generally for all ſorts, except Calves, to let them blood twice in the year, namely the Spring and fall, the Moon being in any of the lower ſignes, and alſo to give them to drink of the pickle of Olives mixed with a head of *garlick* bruiſed therein &

for

for your calves, be only carefull that they go not too soon to graſſe, and ſmall danger is to be feared. Now notwithſtanding all a mans carefulneſſe, Beaſts daily do get infirmities, and often fall into mortall extremities, peruſe therefore theſe Chapters following, and you ſhall find cure for every particular diſeaſe.

## CHAP. 2.

### *Of the Fever in Cattell.*

*CAttel* are moſt ſubject unto a Feaver, and it commeth eyther from ſurfet of food, being raw, and muſty, or from flux of cold humors ingendred by old keeping: the ſigns are trembling, heavy eyes, a foaming mouth, and much groaning: and the cure is, *you ſhall let him bloud, and then give him to drink a quart of Ale, in which is boyled three or four roots of Plantain, and two ſpoonfuls of the beſt London Treakle, and let his Hay be ſprinkled with water.* the cure.

## CHAP. 3.

### *Of any inward ſickneſſe in Cattel.*

FOr any inward ſickneſſe or drooping in cattel, take a quart of ſtrong *Ale*, and boyl it with a handfull of Wormwood, and half a handfull of Rew; then ſtrain it, and adde to it two ſpoonfuls of the juyce of Garlicke, and as much of the juyce of Houſeleeke, and as much *London Treakle*, and give it the Beaſt to drink, being no more but lukewarm.

## CHAP. 4.

### *Of the Diſeaſes in the head as the Sturdy, or turning-evill.*

THis diſeaſe of the Sturdy is knowne by a continuall turning about of the Beaſt in one place; and the cure is to caſt the Beaſt, and having made his feet faſt to ſlit the upper part of his fore-head croſſe-wiſe, about four the cure.

inches

inches each way, then turning up the skin and laying the skull bare, cut a piece out of the skull two inches ſquare or more: then look, and next unto the panicle of the brain, you ſhall ſee a bladder lye full of water and bloud, which you ſhall very gently take out, and throw away; then annoint the place with warm freſh Butter, turn down the skin, and with a needle and a little red ſilk ſtitch it cloſe together; then lay on a hot playſter of Oyl, Turpentine, Waxe, and a little Rozen melted together with Flax hurds, and ſo folding warm woollen cloaths about the head, let the Beaſt riſe, and ſo remain three or four dayes ere you dreſſe it again, and then heal it up like another wound, only obſerve in this cure, by no means you touch the brain, for that is mortall, and then the help is both common and moſt eaſie.

## CHAP. 5.

### *Of Diſeaſes in the eyes of Cattell, as the Haw, a ſtroak, inflammation, weeping, or the pinne or webbe.*

FOr any generall ſoreneſſe in the eyes of Cattle, take the water of *Eye-bright*, mixt with the juyce of *Houſe-leeke*, and waſh them therewith, and it will recover them: but if a Haw breed therein, then you ſhall cut it out, which every ſimple Smith can doe. But for a ſtroak, inflammation, Pin or Web, which breeds excreſſions upon the eyes: take a new laid Egge, and put out half the white, then fill it up with Salt, and a little Ginger, and roſte it extream hard in hote cinders; which done, beat it to powder ſhell and all; but before you roſte it, wrap it in a wet cloath, and put of this powder into the Beaſts eye, and it will heale and cure it.

CHAP.

## CHAP. 6.

*Of diſeaſes in the mouth, as barbs under the tongue, blaine on the tongue, teeth looſe, or tongue venomed.*

THeſe barbs or paps which grow under the tongus of cattel, and being inflamed do hinder them from feeding, you ſhal with a keen pair of ſheers cut away cloſe by the fleſh, and if they bleed much as they will do if they be rank) you ſhall then with a red hot bodkin ſear them, and drop on the top of the ſeared places a drop or two of Rozen or Butter mixt together; but if they bleed not, then onely rub them with Sage and ſalt, and they will heal. Now for the blain on the tonge, of ſome called the tin-blain it is a bliſter which groweth at the roots of the tongue, and commeth through heat of the ſtomack and much chafing, and is oft very mortal, for it will riſe ſo ſuddenly and ſo big that it will ſtop the wind of the Beaſt. The cure is, to thruſt your hand into the mouth of the beaſt, & drawing out his tongue, with your nail to break the bliſter, and then to waſh the ſore place with ſtrong brine, or Sage, ſalt, and water, if you find more bliſters then one break them all, and waſh them and it is a preſent cure. Now for looſe teeth, you ſhal let the beaſt bloud in his gums, and under his tail, then waſh his chaps with ſage and woodbine leavs, boild in brine: laſtly if the tongue be venomed, which you ſhall know by the unnaturall ſwelling thereof: you ſhall take Plantain, and boiling it with vinegar and ſalt, waſh the tongue therewith, and it will cure it. The Cure.

## CHAP. 7.

*Of diſeaſes in the neck, as being galled, bruiſed, ſwolne, out of joynt, or having the cloſh.*

IF any oxes neck be galled, bruiſed, or ſwolne with the

the yoak, take the leaves of round *Aristolochia*, and beating them in a Morter, with tallow, or fresh grease, annoint the sore place therewith, and it will not onely heal it, but any strayn in the neck, even if the bone be a little disordered. Now for the *Closhe* or *Clowse* which causeth a Beast to pill and lose the hair from his neck, and is bred by drawing in wet and rainy weather: you shall take the ashes of an old burnt shooe, and strew it upon the neck, and then rub it over with Tallow and Turpentine mixt together.

## CHAP. 8.

### *Of the Pestilence, Gargill, or Murrain in Beasts.*

THis Pestilence or Murraine amongst Beasts is bred by divers occasions; as from rankneese of bloud, or feeding, from corruption of the ayre, intemperateneese of the weather, inundation of flouds, or the infection of other *Cattel*: much might be said of the violence and mortality thereof, which hath utterly unfurnished whole Countries; but to go to the cure: *you shall give to all your cattel, as wel the sound as sick, this medicine, which never failed to preserve as many as have taken it*: take of old urine a quart, and mixe it with a handfull of Hens dung dissolved therein, and let your Beast drink it.

The cure.

## CHAP. 9.

### *Of the misliking, or leanneese of Beasts.*

IF your Beast fall into any unnatural mislike or leanneese, which you shal know by the discolouring of his hair: you shall then cause him first to be let bloud, and after take sweet Butter, and beat it into a morter, with a little *Myrrhe*, and the shaving of *Ivory*, and being kept fasting, make him swallow down two or three balls thereof: and if it be in the Winter, feed him with sweet Hay; if in the Summer, put him to grasse.

CHAP.

## CHAP. 10.

### *Of the diſeaſe in the Guts, as fluxe, coſtiveneſſe, cholike, and ſuch like.*

IF your Beaſt be troubled with any ſore lax, or bloudy flux, you ſhall take a handful of the ſeeds of *woodroſe*, and being dryed and beaten to powder, brew it with a quart of ſtrong Ale, and give it the Beaſt to drinke. But if he be too dry or coſtive in his body, then you ſhall take a handfull of *Fennegreek*, and boyle it in a quart of Ale, and give it him to drink; but for any chollick or belly-ake, or knawing of the guts, boyle in the water which he drinketh good ſtore of oyle, and it will helpe him.

## CHAP. 11.

### *Of piſſing of bloud.*

IF your Beaſt piſſe bloud, which commeth either of over-labouring, or of hard and ſower feeding, you ſhall take *Shepheards purſe*, and boyl it in a quart of red wine, and then ſtrain it, and put to it a little *Cynamon*, and ſo give it the Beaſt to drink.

## CHAP. 12.

### *Of dropping noſtrils, or any cold in the head.*

IF your Beaſts noſtrils run continually, which is a ſign of cold in the head, you ſhall take *Butter* and *Brimſtone*, and mixing them together, annoint two gooſe-feathers therewith, and thruſt them up into the noſtrils of the Beaſt; and uſe thus to do every morning till they leave dropping.

## CHAP. 13.

### *Of any ſwelling in a Beaſt whatſoever.*

IF your Beaſt have any outward ſwelling, bath it with oyl and vinegar exceeding hot, and it will aſſwage it:

but if the ſwelling be inward, then boyl round *Ariſtolochia* in his water.

## CHAP. 14

### *Of the worm in the tayl.*

THere is a worm which will breed in the taile of a beaſt, and doth not onely keepe him from feeding, but alſo eateth away the hair of the taile, and diſfigureth the beaſt. The cure is, to waſh the tail in ſtrong lye made of urine and *Aſh-wood aſhes*, and that will kill the worm and, and alſo heal and dry up the ſore.

The cure.

## CHAP. 15.

### *Of any cough, or ſhortneſſe of breath in Cattle.*

IF your beaſt be troubled with the cough or ſhortneſſe of breath, you ſhall give him to drink divers mornings together a ſpoonfull or two of Tarre diſſolved in a quart of new milk, and a head of Garlick clean pild and bruiſed.

## CHAP. 16.

### *Of any Impoſtume, bile, or botch in a Beaſt.*

IF your beaſt be troubled with any impoſtume, bile, or botch, you ſhall take Lilly roots and boil them in milk till they be ſoft, ſo that you may make them like pap: then being very hote clap it to the ſoar, and then when it comes to be ſoft, open it with a hot iron, and let out the filth, then heal it up with Tar, Turpentine, and oyl mixt together.

## CHAP. 17.

### *Of diſeaſes in the ſinews, as weakneſſe, ſtiffneſſe, or ſoreneſſe.*

IF you find by the unnimble going of your beaſt, that his ſinews are weak, ſhrunk or tender: Take *Mallows* and *Chickweed*, and boyle them in the dregs of *Ale* or in *vinegar*, and being very hot, lay it to the offended member,

member, and it will comfort the ſinewes.

## CHAP. 18.

### *Of the generall ſcab, particular ſcab, itch, or ſcurfe in Cattle.*

IF your Beaſt be troubled with ſome few ſcabs here and there on his body, you ſhall onely rub them off, and annoynt the place with black Sope and Tar, mixt together, and it will heal them. But if the ſcab be univerſall over the body, and the ſcabs mixt with a dry ſcurf, then you ſhall firſt let the beaſt blood, after rub off the ſcabs and ſcurf til the skin bleed, then waſh it with old urine and greene Copporas together; and after the bathing is dry, annoynt the body with Bores-greaſe, and Brimſtone mingled together.

## CHAP. 19.

### *Of the hide-bound or dry skin in Cattle.*

THis grief commeth of over-much labour and ev ill keeping, and above all other beaſts your *Lincolnſhire* Oxen are ſubject unto it, the ſignes are a diſcoloured and hard skin, with much leanneſſe: the cure is, to let him blood, and to give him to drink a quart of good ſtrong Ale brewed with *Myrre*, and the powder of *bay berries*, or for want of *berries* the Bay-tree leaves, and then keepe him warme and feede him with Hay that is a little Mow-burnt, and onely looketh red, but is not duſty or mouldy, for that will get him an appetite to drink, and drinking will looſen his skinne. The cure.

## CHAP. 20.

### *Of the diſeaſes in the lungs, eſpecially the lung growne.*

THe Lungs of a beaſt are much ſubject to ſickneſſe, as may appear by much panting, and ſhortneſſe of breath, the ſignes being a continuall coughing, but that

which is before prescribed for the Cough, will cure all these, only for a Beast which is Lung-grown, or hath his lungs grown to his side, which commeth through some extream drought taken in the Summer season, and is known by the cough, hoarse, or hollow coughing; you shall take a pint of *Tanners oze*, and mixe it with a pint of new milke, and one ounce of brown Sugar-candy, and give it the Beast to drink, this hath bin found a present cure: or to giue him a ball as big as a mans fist of Tar and Butter mixt together, is a very certaine cure.

## CHAP. 21.

### *Of biting with a mad Dog, or any other venemous Beast.*

IF your Beast be bitten with a mad Dog, or any other venemous Beast, you shall take *Plantain*, and beat it in a morter with *Bolearmoniake*, *Saguis*, *Draconis*, Barley meale, and the whites of Egs, and playster wise lay it to the sore, renewing it once in fourteen hours.

### *Of the falling down of the pallate of a Beasts mouth.*

IN Abour and drought will make the pallate of a Beasts mouth to fall down, which you shall know by a certain hollow changing in his mouth, when hee would eate, also by his sighing, and a desire to eate but cannot. The ordinary cure is, you shall cast the Beast, and with your hand thrust it up, then let him bloud in the pallate, and annoint it with honey and salt; and then put him to grasse, for he may eat no dry meat.

The cure.

CHAP.

## CHAP. XXIII.

### *Of any griefe or pain in the hoof of a beast, and of the Foule.*

TAke *Mugwort*, and beat it in a Mortar with hard *tallow*, & apply it to the hoof of the Beast, and it wil take away any griefe whatsoever. But if he be troubled with that disease, wch is called the *Foul*, and commeth most commonly by treading in mans ordure, you breedeth a soreneſſe and swelling between the cleyes, you shal for the cure cast the beast, & with a Hay-rope rub him so hard between the same, that you make him bleed, then anoint the place with *Tarre*, *Turpentine*, and *Kitching-fee*, mixt together, and keep him out of the dirt, and he will soon be whole. The Cure.

## CHAP. XXIV.

### *Of bruisings in general, on what part of the body soever they be.*

TAke *Brooklime* the leſſe, and fry it with *tallow*, and so hot lay it to the bruise, and it will either expel it, or else ripen it, break it, & heal it, as hath been often approved.

## CHAP. XXV.

### *Of swallowing down hens dung, or any poysonous thing.*

IF your Beast have swallowed downe Hens-dung, Horse-leeches, or any other poysonous thing, you shal take a pint of strong vinegar, & half so much oyl, or sweet Butter, & two spoonfuls of *London-treacle*, & mixing them together on the fire, give it the Beast warm to drink, and it will cure him.

## CHAP. XXVI.

### *Of killing Lice or Ticket.*

BEasts that are bred in Woods under dropping of trees, or in barren & unwholsome places are much sub-

subject to Lice, Tickes, and other Vermine. The Cure whereof is to annoint their body with fresh Grease, Pepper, Staveſaker, and Quicksilver, beaten together untill the Quicksilver be slain.

the cure.

## CHAP. XXXVII.

### *Of the Dewbolo, or generall Gargil.*

HOwsoever some of our English Writers are opinioned, this *Dewbola* or general *Gargil* is a poysonous and violent swelling, begining at the neather part of the Dewlap; and if it be not prevented, the swelling wil ascend upward to the throat of the Beast, and then it is incurable: therefore for the preservation of your beast as soone as you see the swelling appear, cast the beast and slit the swel'd place of the *Dewlap* at least foure inches in length; then take a handful or two of *Speare-grasse*, or *Knot-grasse*, and thrusting it into the wound, stitch it up close, then annoint it with *Butter*, and salt, and so let it rot and wear away of it self, if you perceive that his body be swel'd, which is a sign that the poison is dispers'd inwardly, then it shall be good to give him a quart of *Ale*, and *Rew* boild together, and so to chaffe him up and down wel, both before and after.

## CHAP. XXVIII.

### *Of the losse of the Cud.*

A Beast wil many times through careleſnesse in chawing, lose his Cud, and then mourn & leave to eat: The certain cure whereof is to take a little sowr *Leaven* and *Salt*, and beating it in a Mortar with mans *Vrine* and *Lome*, make a pretty big ball, and force him to swallow it down and it will recover his Cud.

the cure.

CHAP.

## CHAP. XXIX.

### *Of killing of all sorts of wormes either in the Oxe, Cow, or Calfe.*

THere is nothing killeth Wormes in the bodies of cattell soonet than *Saven* chop'd smal, and beaten with sweet *Butter*, and so given in round bals, to the beast, nor any thing maketh them void them so soon as sweet *Wort*, and a little black *Sope* mixt together, & given the Beast to drink.

## CHAP. XXX.

### *Of the vomitting of blood.*

THis disease commeth through rankennesse of blood got in fruitful pastures after hard keeping, insomuch that you shall see the blood flow from their mouthes. The cure is, first to let the beast bloud, and then give to drink *Bolearmoniake* and *Ale* mixt together. the Cure.

## CHAP. XXXI.

### *Of the Gout in Cattell.*

IF your beast be troubled with the Gout, which you shall know by the sudden swelling of his joynts, and falling again, you shall take *Galingall*, and boil it in the dregs of *Ale* and sweet *Butter*, and pultis wise lay it to the offended member.

## CHAP. XXXII.

### *Of milting of a Beast.*

MIlting is when a beast will oft fall, and oft rise, as he is at his labour, and cannot indure to stand any while together: it proceeds from some stroke or bruise either by cudgell or other blunt weapon: And the cure is, not to raise him suddenly, but to give him *Ale*, & some stone *Pitch* mixt very well together to drink.

## CHAP. XXXIII.

*Of provoking a Beast to pisse.*

IF your Beast cannot pisse, steep *Smalage*, or the roots of *Raddish* in a quart of *Ale*, and give it him to drink, and it presently helpeth.

## CHAP. XXXIV.

*Of the over-flowing of the gall in Beasts.*

THe over-flowing of the Gall, is ever knowne by the yellownesse of the skin, and the eyes of the Beast: And the cure is, to give him a quart of Milk, Saffron, and Turmrick mix'd together, to drinke after he hath been let bloud, and so do three mornings together.

## CHAP. XXXV.

*Of a Beast that is goared, either with a stake, or the horn of another Beast.*

TAke *Turpentine* and *Oyle*, and heat them on the coals, and then taint the wound therewith, and it will heale it.

## CHAP. XXXVI.

*Of a Cow that is whethered.*

THis disease is, when a Cow after her calving cannot cast her cleaning, and therefore to compell her to cast it, you shall take the juyce of Bettony, Mugwort, & Mallowes, of each three spoonfuls, and mixe it with a quart of *Ale*, and give it the Beast to drink: and also give her to eat scorched Barley, and it will force her to avoid her burthen suddenly.

## CHAP. XXXVII.

*Of drawing out thorns or stubs.*

TAke black Snails and black Soap, and beat them to a salve, and apply them to the sore, and it wil draw the griefe to be apparant.

## CHAP. XXXVIII.

### *Of purging of Cattel.*

THere is nothing doth purge a Beast so naturally, as the green weedy grass which groweth in Orchards under trees, nor any medicine doth purge them better than *tar*, *butter*, and *sugar candy*, mixt together, and given in balls as big as an Hens-egge.

## CHAP. XXXIX.

### *Of being shrew-run, or shrew-bitten.*

A Shrew Mouse, which is a Mouse with short uneven legs, & a long head like a Swines, is venemous and if it bite a Beast, the Sore will swell and rankle, and put the Beast in danger; but if it only run over a Beast, it feebleth his hinder parts, & maketh him unable to go: the cure then for being shrew-bitten, is the same which is formerly shewed for the bitidg of other venemous Beasts: but if he be shrew-run, you shall onely draw him under, or beat him with a bramble, which groweth at both ends in the Furrows of Corn lands.

## CHAP. XL.

### *Of faintnesse in labour.*

IF your Beast in his labour, and heat of the day, chance to faint, you shal loose him, and drive him to the running stream to drink, and then give him two or three Ospines full of parch'd Barley to eat, and he will labour fresh again.

## CHAP. XLI.

### *Of breeding Milk in a Cow.*

IF your Cow after her calving cannot let downe her Milke, you shall give her a quart of strong Posset-Ale, mix'd with *Anne-seeds*, and *Coliander-seeds*, beaten

to powder, to drinke every morning, and it will not only make her milke spring, but also encrease it wonderfully.

## CHAP. XLII.

### *Of bones out of joynt, or bones broken.*

IF any Beast have a bone broken, or misplaced, after you have set it right, and in his true place, you shall wrap a plaster about it, made of *Burgundy-pitch*, *tallow*, and *Linseed-oyle*, and then splent it, and let it remain unbound 15. dayes, and it will doe it much good.

## CHAP. XLIII.

### *Of the rot in Beasts.*

IF your Beast be subject to rottennesse, which you may know by his leanneſse, misliking, and continual scowring behind: you shal take *Bay-berries*, beaten to powder, Myrrhe, Ivy-leaves, Elder-leaves, and Feather-few, a good lump of dry clay, and Bay-salt, mixe these together in strong Urine, and being warm, give the Beast half a pint thereof to drinke, and it will knit and preserve them.

## CHAP. XLIV.

### *Of the Pantas.*

THe Pantas is a very faint Disease, and maketh a Beast to sweat, shake, and pant much. The Cure is to give him in Ale & Urine, mixt together, a little soot and a little earning to drink, two or three mornings before you labour him.

## CHAP. XLV.

### *Of all manner of wounds in Beasts.*

TO cure any wounds in Beasts given by edg-tools or otherwise, where the skin is broke, take Hogs greaſe, Tar, Turpentine, and Waxe, of each alike quan-

or tity

tity, and a quarter so much Verdigrease, and melt them all together into one salve, and apply it to the wound by spreading it upon a cloath, and it will heal it without any rank or dead flesh.

*The end of the Bull, Oxe, Cow, and Calf, &c.*

# OF SHEEPE.

## CHAP. I.

*Of Sheep in generall, their use, choyce, shape, and preservation.*

TO enter into any longer discourse of praise or profit of sheepe, or to shew my reading by relation of the sheep of other countries were frivolous, because I am to write much in a very little Paper, and I speak only to my Country-men the English, who desire to learne & know their own profit. Know then, that whosoever will stock himself with good sheep, must look into the nature of the soyl in which he liveth; For sheepe according to the Earth and Aire in which they live, doe alter their nature and properties: the Barren Sheepe becomming good, in good soyles, and the good sheepe barren in evill soyles. If then you desire to have sheepe of a curious fine staple of Wool, from whence you may draw a thred as fine as silk, you shal

shal see such in *Herefordshire*, about *Lempster* side, & other special parts of that Countrey; in that part of *Worster-shire*, joyning upon *Shrop-shire*, and many such like places: yet these sheep are very little of bone, black faced, and bear a very little burthen. The sheepe upon *Cotsal* hils, are of better bone, shape and burthen, but their staple is courser and deeper. The sheepe in that part of *Worstershire*, which joyneth on *Warwickshire*, & many parts of *Warwickeshire*, all *Lieceſterſhire*, *Buckinghamshire*, & part of *Northamptonshire*; & that part of *Nottinghamshire*, which is exempt from the Forrest of *Sherwood*, beareth a large boned sheep, of the best shape, and deepest staple; chiefly, if they be Pasture-sheep; yet is their Wool courser then that of *Cotsal*. *Lincoln-shire* especially in the salt Marshes have the largest sheep, but not the best Wool, for their legges and bellies are long & naked, & their staple is courser then any other: The sheep in *Yorkshire*, and so Northward, are of reasonable big bone, but of a staple rough and hairy, and the Welch sheepe are of all the worst, for they are both little, & of worse staple; and indeed, are praised only in the dish, for they are the sweetest Mutton.

Of the choice of sheep.

If now, knowing the natures and properties of the sheep of every Country, you goe about to stocke your ground, be sure to bring your sheepe from a worser soyle to a better, and not from a better to a worse. The

Of the Leare.

Lear, which is the Earth on which a sheepe lyeth, and giveth him his colour, is much to be respected: the red Leare is held the best, the dusk-ish, inclining to a little rednesse, is tolerable, but the white or dirty Leare stark naught. In the choice therefore of your sheepe, chuse the biggest boned, with the best wool; the staple

being

being ſoft, greaſie, well curled, & cloſe together, ſo that a man ſhall have much adoe to part it with his fingers. Theſe ſheep beſides the bearing of the beſt burthen, are alwayes the beſt Butchers ware, and go ſooneſt away in the Market. Therefore, in the choice of ſheepe for your breed, have a principall reſpect to your Rams, for they ever marre or make a flocke: let them then as neer as you can, have theſe properties or ſhapes. Firſt, large of body in every generall part, with a long body, and a large belly, his fore-head would be broad, round, and well riſing, a cheerful large eye, ſtraight ſhort noſtrils, and a very ſmall muzel; by no means any horns, for the dodder ſheep is the beſt breeder, and his iſſue never dangereth the Dam in yeaning, as the horned ſheep do: beſides, thoſe ſheepe which have no hornes, are of ſuch ſtrength of head, that they have oft beene ſeene to kill thoſe ſheep which have the largeſt horns and beſt wrinkled: a ſheep would have a large upright neck, ſomewhat bending like the necke of a horſe, a very broad back, round buttocks, a thicke taile, and ſhort joynted legs, ſmall, clean and nimble, his wooll would be thick, and deep, covering his belly all over; alſo his face, and even to his noſtrils, and ſo downwards to his very knees and hinder houghs. And thus according to the ſhape, properties and ſoyle, from whence you chuſe your Rams chuſe the reſt of your Flock alſo. The ſhape of a Sheep.

The beſt time for your Ewes to bring forth their yong ones, is, if they be Paſture-ſheep, about the latter end of *April*, and ſo untill the beginning of *June*; but if they be Field-ſheep, then from the beginning of *January* till the end of *March*, that their lambs may be ſtrong and able before May day to follow their dams over the rough Fallow lands, and Water furrowes, which weak Lambes When Ewes ſhould bring forth.

Lambs are not able to doe; and although to yean thus early in the winter, when there is no graſſe ſpringing, and the ſharpneſs of the weather alſo be dangerous, yet the husbandman muſt provide ſhelter and ſweet fodder and the Shepheard with great vigilance be ſtirring at all hours to prevent evils, for the reaſons before ſhewed, and though the Ewe at the firſt be ſcant of Milk, yet as the warme weather increaſeth, and the graſs beginneth to Spring, ſo will her milk ſpring alſo.

Ordering of Lambes.

Now for your Lambs: about *Michaelmas* you ſhall ſeperate the male from the female; and having choſen out the worthieſt, which you mean to keep for Rams put them aſide, and then gueld the reſt, which every orderly Shepheard can do ſufficiently, for there is no danger in guelding young lambs. The firſt year a male Lamb is called a weather-Hog, and a female Lamb an Ewe-Hog: the ſecond year the male is a weather, and the female a Theaf, & then ſhe may be put to the ram but if you let her go over that year alſo, then ſhee is a double Theafe, and will both her ſelf be the goodlier Sheep, & alſo bring forth the goodlier lamb; whence it comes, that the beſt Sheep-maſters, make more account of the double Theafe then of any other breeder.

Needfull Obſervations.

You ſhall obſerve never to ſheare your Lambes till they be full Hogs: you ſhall ever waſh three dayes before you ſhear: the beſt time of ſhearing is from *June* to *Auguſt*, Ewes are ever good breeders from three years old till their mouths break. If you would have your Ewes bring forth male Lambes, note when the North-wind bloweth, & driving your flock againſt the wind: let your Rammes ride as they go, and this will make the Ews to conceive Male Lambs: ſo likewiſe, if you would

would have female Lambs, put your Rammes to the Ewes when the wind bloweth out of the South.

Now for the general preſervation of ſheep, feed them as much as you can upon high grounds, which are dry and fruitful, the graſs ſweet, yet ſo ſhort that it muſt be got with much labour: but if you muſt force perforce feed upon low and moiſt grounds, which are infectious, you ſhall not bring your ſheep from the fold (for I now ſpeak to the honeſt Engliſh husbandman) untill the Sun be riſen, and that the beams beginne to draw the dew from the earth, then having let them forth, drive them to their place of feed, & there, with your dog chaſe them up and down til they be weary & then let them either feed or take their reſt, which they pleaſe, this chaſing firſt, beateth away mill dews, and all other dews from the earth, as alſo thoſe webs, kels, & flakes which lying on the earth, & a ſheep licking them up, do breed rottenneſſe: alſo this chaſing ſtirreth up that naturall heat in a ſheep, which drinketh up, and waſteth the abundance of moiſture, which elſe would turn to rottenneſſe. Beſides a ſheep, being thus chaſed and wearied, will fall to his food more deliberately, & not with ſuch greedineſſe as otherwiſe he would, and alſo make choice of that meat which is beſt for his health. If a Shepheard once in a moneth, or alwayes when he hath occaſion to handle his Sheep, rub their mouthes with *Bay ſalt*, it is an excellent preſervatien againſt all manner of ſickneſſe, and very comfortable for a ſheep alſo, for a ſheep wil very wel live, and abate of his fleſh by rubbing his mouth once a day with *Bay ſalt* only. Now, for as much as notwithſtanding theſe principles a ſheep falleth into many infirmities, hereafter followeth the ſeverall cures of all manner of diſeaſes.

Chap.

## CHAP. 2.

### *The signes to know a sound sheep, and an unsound sheepe.*

IF a sheep be sound and perfit, his eye will be bright and cheerfull, the white pure without spot, and the strings red, his gums also will be red, his teeth white and even, his skin on his brisket will be red, and so will each side betwixt his body and his shoulder where Wooll grows not, his skin in generall will be loose, his Wool fast, his breath long, and his feet not hot; but if he be unsound, then these signs will have contrary faces, his eyes will be heavy, pale and spotted, his breast and gums white, his teeth yellow and foul, his Wooll when it is pulled will easily part from his body; and when hee is dead open him and you shall find his belly full of water, his fat yellow, his Liver putrified, and his flesh moyst and watrish.

## CHAP. 3.

### *Of sickneſse in generall, or the Feaver among ſt sheep.*

CHange of pasture is a great cure for sick sheepe, yet if you find any more particularly troubled the rest: take *Puliol royall*, and stamping it, mixe the juyce with water and vinegar the quantity of halfe a pint, and give it the sheep with a horn luke warm; and by no means let the sheep be much chaf't: also in these sicknesses the shepheard must have a great care to note from whence the disease groweth, if it proceed from cold, then to drive his sheep to shelter, if from heat, then to feed them in shady and coole places.

## CHAP. 4.

### *Of the generall scab, or Itch in sheep.*

THis generall Scab or Itch in sheep is of all diseases the most common among them, proceeding from rayny

rainy and wet weather, which falling upon their skins, if they happen to be chaft or heated after, they presently break forth into the scabs, which you shall know by a white filthy scurf sticking upon their skins: and the most usual medicine for the same, which all shepheards use, is to annoint the place with *tarre* and *grease*, mixt together, but if upon the first appearance of the Itch you steep *Puliol-royal* in water, and wash the skin therewith, it will preserve them from running into the scab.

## CHAP. 5.

### *Of killing Maggots in sheepe.*

IF a sheep be troubled with Maggots, you shall take *Goose grease*, *tar*, and *Brimstone*, and mix them together on the fire, and then annoiut the place therewith, and it will kill the Maggots.

## CHAP. 6.

### *Of the Red-water.*

THe red water is a poysonous disease in sheep, offending the heart, and is indeed as the pestilence amongst other cattle: therefore when you find any of your sheep infected therewith, you shall first let him bloud in the foot between the claws, and also under the tayl, and then lay to the sore places *Rew* or *Wormwood*, beaten with bay Salt, and it helpeth.

## CHAP. 7.

### *Of Lung-sick, or any cough or cold.*

IF your sheep be troubled with any sickneſſe in his Lungs, which you shall know by his coughing and shortneſſe of breath, you shall take *Tussilago*, or *Coltsfoot* and *Lungwort*, and stamping them, strain the juyce into a little *honey* & *water*, and give it the sheep to drink.

## CHAP. 8.

### *Of the worm in the Claw of the sheep, or any other part.*

THis Worm breeceth commonly before, between the claws of the foot: but wheresoever it breeceth, it is known by the head, which is like a tuft of hair, and will stick forth in a bunch. The cure is, to slit the foot and draw out the worm without breaking it: and then annoint the place with *Tarre* and *tallow* mixt to gether for *tarre* simply of it self will draw too much.

The cure.

## CHAP. 9.

### *Of the wildfire in Sheepe.*

THis disease which is called the wild-fire, is a very infectious sickness, and will indanger the whole flock; but howsoever, incurable it his held, yet it is certain that if you take *Chervile*, and stamping it with old *Ale*, make a salve thereof, and annoint the sore therewith, it will kill the fire and set the sheep safe: and though some for this disease, bury the first infected sheep alive, with his heeles upward before the sheep-coat door, yet this medicine hath bin ever found more effectuall.

## CHAP. 10.

### *Of the diseases of the Gall, as Choler, Iaundise, and such like.*

THese diseases are known by the yellownesse of the sheep skin: and the cure is, to take *Plaintain* and *lettice*, and stamping them to gether mix their juyce with Vinegar, and give half a pint to a sheep to drink.

The Cure.

## CHAP 11.

### *Of the tough fleam or stopping in Sheepe.*

IF your sheep be stopt in the head, breast or weasand, either with tough fleam or other cold humors, which you shal know by the running of the nostrils, then take

the

the powder of *Puliol-royall*, and making it with clarified hony, diſſolve it in warme water the quantity of half a pint, and give it the ſheep to drink, and it will looſen the fleame.

## CHAP. 12.

### *Of broken bones in ſheep, or bones out of joynt.*

IF your ſheep chance to break a leg, or have any other bone miſplaced, you ſhall after you have ſet it ſtraight and right again: firſt bathe it with oyle and wine, and then dipping a cloath in molten *Patchgreaſe*, roule it about, and ſplint it as occaſion ſhall ſerve, and ſo let it remain nine dayes, and dreſſe it again, and at the end of the next nine dayes, the ſheep will be able to goe.

## CHAP. 13.

### *Of any ſickneſſe in Lambes.*

IF your Lamb be ſick, you ſhal give it *Mares milk*, or *Goats milke*, or the owne Dams milke mixt with water to drink, and keep it very warm.

## CHAP. 14.

### *Of the Sturdy, turning-evil, or More-found.*

THeſe diſeaſes proceed from rankneſſe of Bloud which offendeth the Brain, and other inward parts. The cure then is to let the ſheep bloud in the eye veins, temple veins, and through the noſtrils, then to rub the places with young *Nettles* bruiſed. The cure.

## CHAP. 15.

### *Of Diſeaſes in the eyes, as the Haw, dimneſſe, or any ſoreneſſe.*

IF your ſheep have any imperfection in his eyes, you ſhall drop the juyce of Selandine into them, and it is a preſent help.

## CHAP. 16.

### *Of water in a ſheepes belly.*

IF a ſheep have water in his belly betweene the outward fleſh and the rim, then you may ſafely adventure to let it forth by making a little hole through the fleſh, and putting in a quill, but if it be betweene the rim and the bag, then it is incurable; for you may by no means cut the rim aſunder: when the water is ſet forth, you ſhall ſtitch up the hole, and annoint it with Tarre and Butter mixt together. This water if it remain in the body will rot the ſheep.

## CHAP. 17.

### *Of the tagd or belt ſheep.*

A Sheep is ſaid to be tagd or belt, when by a continual ſquirt running out of his ordure, he berayeth his tayl in ſuch wiſe, that through the heat of the dung it ſcaldeth and breedeth the ſcab therein. The cure is, with a pair of ſheeres to cut away the tags, and to lay the ſore bare and raw, and then to throw earth dryed upon it, and after that *tarre* and *Gooſe-greaſe* mixt together.

the cure.

## CHAP. 18.

### *Of the poxe in ſheep.*

THe poxe in ſheep, and ſmall red pimples like purples riſing on the skin, and they are infectious. The cure is, to take *Roſemary*, and boyl the leaves in *vinegar*, and bathe the ſores therewith, and it will heale them: change of paſture is good for this diſeaſe, and you ſhal alſo ſeparate the ſick from the ſound.

The cure.

## CHAP. 19.

### *Of the wood-evil or cramp.*

THis diſeaſe is weakneſs or ſtraining of the ſinewes, got by colds and ſurfets: it is very mortall, and will

run

run though a whole flock: The Cure is, to take *Cinkfoil* or *five-leaved* grasse, and boyl it in Wine, and give the sheep a pint thereof to drink, and keep him warm and chafe his legs with *oyl* and *vinegar*. The Cure.

## CHAP. 20.

### *Of making an Ewe to love her own Lamb, or any other Ews Lamb.*

IF an Ewe grow unnatural, and will not take her lamb after she hath yeaned it, you shall take a little of the clean of the Ewe, which is the bed in which the Lamb lay, and force the Ewe to eat it, or at least chew it in her mouth, and she will fall to love it naturally; but if an Ewe have cast her lamb, and you would have her take to another Ews Lamb, you shall take the Lamb which is dead, and with it rub and daub the live lamb all over and so put it to the Ewe, and she will take as natural to it, as if it were her own.

## CHAP. 21.

### *Of licking up poyson.*

IF a Sheep, chance to lick up any poison, you shall perceive it by a suddaine swelling and reeling of the sheep. And the cure is, as soon as you see it stagger, to open the mouth, and you shal find one or more blisters upon the tongue Roots, you shall presently break them with your fingers, and rub them with Earth or Sage, and then pisse into the Sheepss mouth, and it will do well. The cure.

## CHAP. 22.

### *Of Lambs yeaned sick.*

IF a Lamb be yeaned sicke and weak, the Shepheard shall fold it up in his cloak, blow into the mouth of it, and then drawing the Dams dugs squirt milk into the mouth of it.

## CHAP. 23.

### *Of making an Ewe to be easily delivered.*

IF an Ewe can hardly bring forth or yean her Lamb, you shall take *Balsamint*, or *Horse-mint*, and put either the juyce or powder of it into a little strong Ale, and give it the Ewe to drink, and she will yean presently.

## CHAP. 24.

IF a sheeps teeth be loose, let him bloud in his gums, and under his tayl, and then rub his teeth with earth, Salt and Sage.

## CHAP. 25.

### *Of increasing milke in Ewes.*

NOthing increaseth milk in Ews more then change of pasture and feeding, driving them one while unto the Hils, another while to the Vallyes, and where the grasse is sweeteſt and short, the sheep eateth with best appetite, there see you continue longest: and touching giving them *Fitches*, *Dill*, *Annisseeds*, and such like; this change of ground will make milke spring much better.

## CHAP. 26.

### *Of the staggers, or leafe-sickneſse in Lambes, or elder sheepe.*

THe staggers is ingendred in sheepe by surfeiting on Oke leaves, Hawthorn leaves, or such like, which Lambs are very apt unto: it is a cold corrupt bloud, or fleame, gathered together about the brain, and indeed is suddainly mortall. The best cure is, to take *Asafetida*, and dissolve it in warm water, and put the quantity of half a spoonful into each ear of the sheep or Lamb, and it is a present remedy.

The Cure.

CHAP.

## CHAP. 27.

### *Of worms in the guts of Sheep or Lambes.*

SHeep are as subject to worms in their guts and stomacks as any other Cattell whatsoever, which you shall know by beating their bellies with their feet, and by looking continually at their bellies. The cure is, to take the leaves of *Coliander*, and to stamp them, and then mixing the juyce thereof with honey, to give the sheep to drink, and then chase him a little, and keepe him two or three hours fasting. The cure.

## CHAP. 28.

### *Of the losse of the Cud.*

THat which helpeth the losse of the Cud in Oxe or Cow, the same is a present remedy for sheep, and is spoke of before in a former Chapter.

## CHAP. 29.

### *Of saving Sheep from the Rot.*

THis disease is the cruellest of all other amongst sheep, and extendeth his violence over all the Flock: nay, over Townships & countries: and though it be held of most men incurable, yet good government, and this receit which I shall deliver you, will not only prevent it, but preserve your sheepe safe: Therfore, as soon as you perceive that any of your sheep are tainted, you shall take *Adraces*, which is a certain salt gathered from the salt Marches in the heate of Summer, when the Tide is going away, and leaving certain drops of salt water on the grasse, then the violent heat of the Sun turnes it to Salt: and to speak briefly, all Salt made by the violence of the Suns heat only, is taken for *Adraces*, of which there is infinite store in Spain. With this *Adraces* rub the mouths of all your sheep once a week, and you shall never need to fear

the rotting of them, for it hath been well tried: and as I imagine, the experiment was found out from this very ground. It is a rule, and well known at this day in Lincolnshire, and in Kent, that upon the salt Marshes sheep did never dye of the Rot: no other reason being known therefore, but the licking up of that Salt, and without doubt, it is most infallible and most easie.

## CHAP 30.

### *A few precepts for the Shepheard.*

IT is meete that every good and carefull Shepheard know what food is good for Sheep, what hurtfull: that following the one, and eschewing the other, he may ever keep his Cattle in health. The grasse that is most wholesome for sheep, is that which hath growing in it good store of *Melilot, Claver, Sel-heal, Cynckle-foyle, Broom, Pympernell, and white Henband.*

The grasse which is unwholesome for sheepe, *is that which hath growing amongst it, Spear, Wort, Penniwort, or Penny-grasse, and any weed which grow from inundations or over-flowes of water; likewise, Knot-grasse is not good, nor Mildewd grasse.* Of all Rots the hungar rot is the worst, *for it both putrifieth the flesh and skin, and this is most incident to field sheepe, for to pasture sheep it never happeneth.* The next Rot to it, is the Pelt-rot, *which commeth by great store of rain immediatly after a sheepe is new shorn, which mildewing the skin corrupteth the body, and this also is incident to field sheepe which want shelter.*

There be little white Snailes which a sheep will lick up, and they will soon rot him.

There will grow upon Ewes teates little dry scabs, which will stop their milke; when the Lambes suck, the shepheard must have care to dull them away.

A Sheep will have a bladder of water under his chin ſometimes, which the ſhepheard muſt be carefull to let out and lance, or the Sheep will not proſper.

In is good not to ſhear ſheep before Midſummer, for the more he ſweateth in his wooll, the better, and more kindly it is.

If you will know the age of your ſheep, look in his mouth, and when he is one ſhear, he wil have two broad teeth afore: when he is two ſhear, he will have foure broad teeth afore: when he is three, he will have ſix, and when he is four ſheare, he will have eight: and after thoſe yeares, his mouth will beginne to breake: for touching that rule of the evenneſſe and unevenneſſe of the mouth, it is uncertaine, and faileth upon many occaſions.

*The end of the Sheepe.*

## *Of Goates.*

### CHAP. 1

### *Of Goats, and their nature.*

SEeing Goats are not of any general uſe in our Kingdom, but only nouriſh'd in ſome wild and barren places, where Cattle of better profit can hardly be maintained, as in the mountainous parts of *Wales*, in the barrenneſt parts of *Cornwall*, and *Devonſhire*, on *Malborne* hils, and ſome few about the *Peak*: I wil not ſtand upon any large diſcourſe, but as briefly as I can, give you their natures and cures. You ſhal then know, that the Goate

t'e nature of Goats. Goat is a beaſt of a hot, ſtrong, and luſty conſtitution; eſpecially in the act of generation, that they exceed all other cattell: delight to live in mountaines that be high, craggy and full of buſhes, bryars, and other woods, they will feed in any plain paſtures, but their ſpecial delight is in brouſing upon trees, they are ſo nimble of foot, that they will go in places of greateſt danger. *The profit which commeth from them is their milk, which is an excellent reſtorative, and their Kids which are an excellent veniſon. They are in other Countries, as in* Spain, *the Ilands of the* Azores, *and the Ilands of the* Canaries, *preſerved for the chaſe, aad for hunting, as we preſerve our Deer both red and fallow, and make excellent paſtime.*

His ſhape. For the ſhape of the Goat, he would have a large body, and well hayred, great legs, upright joynts, not bending, a neck plain and ſhort, a head ſmall and ſlender, large horns, and bending, a big eye, and a long beard, and his colour white, black, or pide. Some do uſe to ſheare them, to make rough mantles of; but it is not ſo with us in *England*. The Shee-Goat would have large teats, and big udder, hanging eares, and no horns, as they have in many places.

the ordering of Goats. Theſe Goats would be kept in ſmall flocks or heards, as not above a hundred in a heard: as they muſt in the heat of Summer have much ſhade, ſo in the Winter likewiſe much ſhelter, for they can neither endure extremity of heat nor cold, eſpecially the violence of Winter, for that will make the ſhee-Goat caſt her Kid, or bring it forth untimely. Theſe love Maſt well, but yet you muſt give them other food to mixe with it. The beſt time to let the male and female go together, is about the beginning of *December*. If you houſe Goats in the Winter, let them have no litter to lye on, but the floore

floor paved, or gravelled; for otherwise, their own heat will annoy them: they must also be kept very cleanly, for they can endure no filthy savours. For the young Kids, you shall in all points order them as you do your Lambes.

Now for their preservation, if they be suffered to go and chuse their own food, they are to themselves so good physitians, that they will seldome or never be troubled with any inward sickneſſe; only the unnaturall exceſſe of their lust maketh them grow soon old, and so both past use and profit. For those particular diseases which accidentally fall vpon them: here followeth the cures.

## CHAP. 11.

### *Of the pestilence in Goats, or any inward and hidden sickneſſe.*

IF you perceive your Goats to droop, or look with sullen or sad countenances, it is an assured signe of sickneſſe; but if they foam or lather at the mouth, then it is a sign of the peſtilence: the cure is, first to separate them from the sound, then to let them bloud, and give them the Buds and Leaves of *Celodine*, with rushes and reeds to eat, and it is a present remedy. the cure.

## CHAP. 12.

### *Of the Dropsie in Goates.*

GOates are very much subject unto the Dropsie, through their exceſſe drinking of water; the signe whereof is a great inflamation and heat in the skin: the cure is to seeth *Wormwood* in Water and Salt, and give a pint thereof to the Goat to drink divers mornings, for to slit and let out the water under the shoulder, is not so certain and safe a cure. The cure.

Chap.

## CHAP. 4.

### *Of ſtopping the teats.*

THere will ingender in the teats of Goates a certain tough hard fleame, which will ſtop the milk from iſſuing: which to cure, you ſhall with your finger and your thumb pull it away, and then annoint the place with *Honey*, and the *Goates milk* mixt together.

## CHAP. 5.

### *Of Goates that cannot Kidde.*

GOates above other Cattle are troubled with hardneſſe in Kidding, by reaſon that if they be chaſed or hunted, their Kids will turn in their Bellies; the Remedy then to preſerve them from that danger, is to keep them quiet and untroubled, untill they have Kidded.

## CHAP. 6.

### *Of the tetter, or dry ſcab in Goates.*

TO heale any tetter, or dry ſcab in Goats, take black Sope, Tar, Hogs-greaſe, and Brimſtone, mixe them well together, and annoint the ſores therewith, and it will heale them.

## CHAP. 7.

### *Of gelding Kiddes in the ſummer ſeaſon.*

KIds being guelt in Summer ſeaſon, as thoſe which are late kidded muſt neceſſarily be; the Fly will be ſo buſie with the ſore, that with their blowings they will breed ſuch ſtore of Maggots in the wound, that it will indanger their lives: to defend them from ſuch annoyance of the Fly, you ſhall take Soot, Tar, and thicke Cream, and mixe them well together, and annoint the wound therewith, and it will both heale it, and keep the Fly away.

Chap.

## CHAP. 8.

### *Of the Itch in Goates.*

IF your Goats be troubled with any itch, ſo that they cannot feed for clawing and biting themſelves, you ſhall waſh their skins with old *Chamber-lye*, and green *Corporas* well boyled together, and it will kill the Itch.

## CHAP. 9.

### *Of the tuel ſtopping in Goates.*

GOates when they are ſucking on their Dams, or when they are new Kidded, will commonly have a great laxe or ſquirt, ſo that the ordure which commeth from them, if it be not well cleanſed and taken from them, it will with their own naturall heate ſo bake and dry, that it will ſtop up their tuels, ſo that they cannot dung, which if it be not holpen, the Kid will dye. The cure is, to cleanſe the place, and open the tuell, and then put into it an inch or thereabouts of a ſmall candles end dipt in *Honey*, and then annoint all the tuell over with *Capons-greaſe*. The Cure.

## CHAP. 10.

### *Of the ſtaggers, or reeling evill in Goates.*

IF your Goats be troubled with the ſtaggers or reeling evill, which is a diſeaſe bred in them by the violent heat of the Sun, you ſhall take *Bayſalt* and *verd-juyce*, and mixe them together, and give the Goat halfe a pint thereof to drink: or elſe take *Houſe-leek* and *Dragons*, of each a like, ſo grounds of *Ale*, with a little new milke, ſtampe the hearbes, and then mingle them together; then put thereto a few *geves* groſly beaten, and then boyl it again, then coole it, and give the ſicke Goat three or four ſpoonfuls thereof to drinke, and it wil cure her. Now for any other infirmities which ſhal happen

happen unto Goats, you may cure them with the ſame medicines which you cure ſheep, for their natures doe not much differ.

*The end of the Goat.*

## Of Swine.

### CHAP. 1.

*Of all manner of Swine, their nature, uſe, ſhapes, and preſervation.*

Although Swine are accounted troubleſome, noyſome, untruly, and great ravenours, as indeed their natures are not much different from ſuch qualities, yet the utility and profit of them will eaſily wipe off thoſe offences; for to ſpeak truly of the Swine, he is the husband-mans beſt Scavenger, and the Houſewives moſt wholeſome ſinke, for his food and living is by that which would elſe rot in the yard, make it beaſtly, and breed no good manmure, or being caſt downe the ordinary ſink in the houſe breed noyſome ſmels, corruption, and infection; for from the Husband-man he taketh pulſe, chaffe, barn-duſt, mans ordure, Garbage, and the weeds of his yard: and from the Houſewife her chaff, ſwillings, Whey, waſhing of tubs, and ſuch like, with which he will live and keepe a good ſtate of body, very ſufficiently, and though he is accounted good in no place but the diſh onely, yet there he is ſo lovely and ſo wholeſome, that all other faults may be borne with.

He

He is by nature greedy, given much to root up grounds, and tear down fences, he is very lecherous, and in that act tedious and brutish: he is subiect to much anger, and the fight of the boars is exceeding mortall: they can by no means indure storms, winds, or foul weather, they are excellent obſervers of their own homes, and exceeding great lovers one of another: ſo that they will die upon any beaſt that offendeth their fellowes.

Now touching the choice of ſwine, you ſhall underſtand that no Country in England breedeth naturally better Swine one then another: but if any have prehe-minence, then I muſt prefer Leiceſterſhiere and ſome parts of Northamptonſhire and clay-countries bordering Leiceſterſhire, and the reaſon I take to be, their great multiplicity of grain, eſpecially beans and pulſe. For the Maſt countries, though they are good feeders, they are no large breeders, whence it comes that your wild ſwine is ever your leaſt ſwine, but your ſweeteſt Bacon. But if the race and keeping be a like the proportion and goodneſſe will be a like: therfore in the choice of your ſwine, chiefly the Boars and Sows which you breed of, let them be long and large of body, deep ſided, and deep bellied, thick thighs, and ſhort legges, for though the long legged ſwine appear a goodly beaſt, yet he but couſeneth the eye, and is not ſo profitable to the Butcher: high claws, thick neck, a ſhort and ſtrong groyne, and a good thick chine well ſet with ſtrong briſtles: the colour is beſt which is all of one peece, as al white, or al ſanded, the pide are the worſt & moſt apt to take Meazels, the black is tolerable, but our Kingdom through the coldnes breedeth them ſeldome.

The uſe and profit of ſwine is onely (as the Husbandmen ſaith) for the roofe, which is Bacon, for the ſpit which

The uſe and profit of ſwine

which is Pork, Sowſe and puddings, and for breed, which is their Pigs only. To have too many Sowes in a yard is not good, for their increaſe, and bringing forth is ſo great, that they will for want of food eat one another: A Sow will bring forth Pigs three times a yeare, namely at the end of every ten weekes, and the numbers are great which they will bring forth: for I have known one ſow have twenty pigs at one litter, twelve, fourteen and ſixteen are very common; yet a Sow can bring up no more pigs then ſhe hath Teats, therefore look how many ſhe hath, and ſo many pigs preſerve of the beſt, the reſt caſt away, or put to other Sows which want, yet give ſuck. A Sow will bring pigs from one yeer old, till ſhe be ſeven years old: the pigs which you rear after you have choſen the beſt for Boars or Sows to breed on, geld the reſt both males and females: the males will make goodly hogs, which are excllent Bacon or porke, & the females which are called ſpade-guilts, will do the like; and breed a great deal more greaſe in their bodies, whence it comes that the husband man eſteemes one ſpayd-guilt before two Hogs, young Shots which are ſwine of three quarters, or but one yeer old, are the daintieſt pork.

Now for the preſervation of ſwine, it is contained in their government and food, and is all that belongeth to the office of the ſwine heard. The orderlieſt feeding of ſwine is, (when you keep them, but in good ſtate of body, and not ſeek to fat them) in the morning early when you unſty them is to give them Draffe, pulſe, or other garbage, with ſwillings in the troughs, and when they have eaten it to drive them to the field, where they may graze and root for their food: and of grounds the ſoft marſh and mooriſh grounds are the beſt, where they may

may get the Roots of Sedge Reeds, Ruſhes, Knot-graſs and ſuch like, which is wholeſome for Swine, of the Fallow or tithe field, where they may root at pleaſure, and by killing the weed bring profit to the earth: and at the fall of the Leaf, it is good to drive them to hedges, where they may get Haws, Hips, Sloes, Crabs, or ſuch fruit, which is alſo very wholeſome; and the poorer ſort will gather their fruits, and keep them ſafe to feed their ſwine with all the winter. When evening commeth you ſhal, drive your ſwine home, and then filling their troughs with Daff and ſwillings let them fill their bellies, and then ſty them up, ſo ſhal you keep them from doing other hurts or injuries. If once in a fortnight you mixe with your ſwillings ſome Radle or red Oaker, it will preſerve them wonderfully from Meazels and all inward infections, and thus much for the generall diſcourſe of ſwine: now I will proceed to their particular infirmities, and other buſineſſes.

## CHAP. 11.

### *Of the Feaver or any hidden ſickneſſe in Swine.*

THere is no beaſt maketh his ſickneſſe ſo apparant as the ſwine for when he findeth any grief or diſtemperature in his body, he preſently droopeth, forſakes his meat, and will not eat till he find in himſelf a perfect Recovery: therefore when you ſhall ſo find him to forſake his meat, you ſhal firſt let him bloud under his tail and under his ears, and if they bleed not freſhly enough you ſhall beat them with a ſmall ſtick, and that will bring forth the blood; then wrap about the wounds the bark of a young Oſier, and then keep him warme, and give him to drink warm ſwillings, wel mixt with barley meal, and red-oaker. The Cure.

## CHAP. 3.

### *Of the Murren, Pestilence, or Cathar in* Swine.

THese diseases being all of one nature, are very much incident to Swine, and spring from many grounds, as from corruption in bloud ingendred by the eating of rotten fruit, or too much Butchers garbage, and many times by eating too rank grass, wherein is much *Hemlock*: the particular signes are, moyst eyes, and their heads born on each side, *but their generall knowledge is their fasting and mortality*: the cure is, to give them in warm wash, *Hens-dung*, and boyld *Liverwort*, with a little *red oaker*.

The Cure.

## CHAP. 4.

### *Of the Gall in Swine.*

SWine will oft have an over-flowing of the *Gall*, because choller is much powerful in them, which you shall know by a swelling which will rise under their jawes, and the cure is, to stamp *Gallwort*, or *Saffron*, and mixe it with *honey* and *water*, and then straining it, give it the Swine to drink by a pint at a time.

The Cure.

## CHAP. 5.

### *Of the Meazles in Swine.*

THis Disease of all other is most common in Swine, and with most ease helped: as thus, you shall take the oldest urine that you can get, and mixe it with red *oaker* till it be thicke, and about the quantity of an Ale quart, then mixe it with a gallon of warm sweet whey, and give it the Swine to drink, after he hath beene kept all night fasting.

## CHAP. 6.

### *Of Impostumes in any part of a* Swine.

SWine will have Impostumes in any parts of their bodies, as under their throats, their ears, bellies, and

oft upon their ſides. The cure is, if they be ſoft, to lance them, and let out the matter, and then heale them with *Tarre* and *Butter*,, but if they be not ſoft, then let the Swine blood under the tongue, and rub all his mouth, chaps and groin, with *wheat* meal and *ſalt*, and the Impoſtume will go away. The Cure.

## CHAP. 7.

### *Of vomiting in Swine.*

IF your Swine do vomit and caſt up his meat, you ſhall give him ſpelted *Beanes* to eat, and they will ſtrengthen his ſtomack.

## CHAP. 8.

### *Of leanneſſe, miſtike, ſcurfe, and mangineſſe in Swine.*

THeſe diſeaſes proceed from corruption of blood, ingendred by lying Wet in their ſties, having filthy rotten Litter, or much ſcarcity of meat. The cure is firſt to let the Swine bloud under the tayle, then to take a Wooll-card, and to comb off all the ſcurf and filth from the Swines back, even till his skin bleed: then take *Tarre*, *Hogs-greaſe* and *Brimſtone*, and mixing them well together, annoint the Swine therewith, then let the ſtie be mended, his Litter be ſweet, and give him good warm food, and the Swine will be fat and ſound very ſuddainly. The Cure.

## CHAP. 9.

### *Of the ſleeping evill in Swine.*

SWine are much ſubject to this diſeaſe in the Sum-time and you ſhall know it by their continual ſleeping, & neglecting to eat their meat: the cure is, to houſe them up, and keep them faſting twenty & four hours, then in the morning when hunger pincheth them, to give them to drink Water, in which is ſtampt good ſtore of The Cure.

*Stonecrop*, which as ſoon as they have drunk, they will vomite and caſt, and that is a preſent remedy.

## CHAP. 10.

### *Of paine in the Milt.*

SWine, are oft troubled with pain in their Milts or Spleens, which proceedeth from the eating of Maſt, when they are firſt put thereunto, through their over greedy eating thereof, and is known by a Reeling, going of one ſide. The cure is, to give them the juyce of *wormwood*, in a little *honied water*, to drink, and it will aſſwage the pain.

The cure.

## CHAP. 11.

### *Of the unnaturalneſſe of ſowes.*

MAny Sows do prove ſo unnaturall that they will devour their Pigs when they have farro'd them which ſpringeth from an unnatural greedineſſe in them which to help, you muſt watch her when ſhe farroweth, and take away the Pigs as they fall, then take the wreckling, or worſt Pig, and annoint it all over with the juyce of *Stonecrop*, and ſo give it the Sow again: and if ſhe devour it, it will make her caſt and vomit ſo extreamly, that the pain of the ſurfeit will make loath to do the like agayn: But of all cures, the beſt for ſuch an unnatural beaſt is to feed her well and then kill her.

## CHAP. 12.

### *Of the Laxe or Flixe in Hogges.*

FOr the Lax or Flixe in Swine, you ſhall give them *Varjuyce* and *milk* mixt together to drink, and then feed him with food, as ſpletted *Beanes*, *Acornes*, or *Acorn-hukes*. This is alſo excellent, and approved for young Pigs and Shots, when they have any ſcouring,

CHAP.

## CHAP. 13.

### *Of the lugging of Swine with doggs.*

IF your Swine be extreamly lugged and bitten with dogs, to prevent the rinckling, and impostumation of the soar, you shall annoint it with Vinegar, Sope, and tallow mixt together, and it will cure the same.

## CHAP. 14.

### *Of the Poxe in Swine.*

THe Poxe is a filthy and infectious disease in Swine, proceeding from corrupt bloud, ingendered by poverty, wet lying, low fineſſe, and such like, and the Swine can never yrosper which hath them. The cure is, to give him first to drink two spoonfuls of *London treacle* in a pint of *honied water*, which wil expel the infection outwardly, then to annoint the sores with *Brimstone* and *Boars-greaſe* mixt together, and so separate the sick from the sound. The Cure.

## CHAP. 15.

### *Of killing Maggots in the ears or other parts of Swine.*

IF Maggots shall breed in the ears of your Swine, which have been lugged with dogs for want of good looking unto, as often it happeneth: you shall take either the sweeteſt Wort you can get, or elſe *honey*, and annoint the sores therewith, and the Maggots presently will fall off and dye.

## CHAP. 16.

### *Of feeding Swine exceeding fat, either for Bacon, or for Lard.*

DIvers men according to the nature of divers countries, have divers ways in feeding of their Swine, as those which live near unto woods and places where store of mast is, turn their Swine unto the Mast for fine The feeding of Swine in wood countries.

or eight weeks and then having got flesh and fat nesse on their backes do bring them home, and put them up in Sties and then feed them for ten days or a fortnight after, with old dry Pease given them oft in the day a little at once, with water, as much as they will drink: for this will harden the flesh and fat so, that it will not consume when it comes to boyling: this manner of feedin is good, and not to be disliked.

The feeding of swine in champain Countries.

Now, the feeding of Swine in Champain Countries, which are far from wood, is in this manner: First, you shall stye up those Swine which you intend to feed, and let them not come out of the same until they be fed but have their food and water brought unto them: now the first two days you shal give them nothing; the third day you shall early in the morning give them a pretty quantity of dry *pease* or *beans*, at noon you shall give them as much more, at four a clock as much more, and when you go to bed as much more, but all that day no water. The next day, you shall feed them again at the same hours, and set water by them that they may drink at their own pleasure; and twice or thrice a week as your provision will serve you, it is good to fill their bellies with sweet whay, Butter-milk, or warm wash, but by no means scant the proportion of their Pease; and by thus doing you shall feed a swine fat enough for the slaughter in four or five weeks.

Of feeding at the Reek.

There be other Husbandmen in Champain Countries, as in *Leicestershiere*, and such like, that put their swine to pease reekes, or stackes, set in the fields neer unto water furrows or ruadles, so that they may let the water into the stack yard, and then morning and evening cut a cutting of the stack or reek, and spread the reaps amongst the swine: this maner of feeding is best for smal porkets

and

and will fat them very reasonable in three Weeks or a month. If you feed sheep amongst your Porkers, it is very good, and daily by many practised; for by that means you shall not loose any of your Grain, for what your sheep cannot gather up your Porkets will.

Of feeding of Swine in or about great Cities.

Now, for such as live in or near about great Cities or Towns, as *London*, *York*, or such like, and have neither great store of Mast, nor great store of Grain; yet they have a manner of feeding as good, and somewhat more speedier then any of the other, onely the Bacon is not so sweet or toothsome; and thus it is: They stie up their fatlings, as is before said, and then take Chandlers Grains, which is the dregs and offall of rendred Tallow, as hard skins, kels, and fleshly lumps, which will not melt, together with other course skins of the Tallow, suet, or Kitchin fee, and mixing it in warm wash, give it the Swine to eat three or four times in the day, and it will suddainly puffe him up with fatnesse; then bestow of every Swine a bushell of dry Pease to harden his flesh, and you may then kill them at your pleasure. The only danger of this food is, it will at first sometimes make Swine scour; especialy young Pigs, if they eat it: but as soon as you perceive such a fault, give unto your elder swine, milk and verjuyce, and to your sucking Pigs verjuyce onely.

Of feeding Hogs for Lard or Boars for Brawn.

Now, lastly, the best feeding of a swine for lard, or a Boar for Brawn, is to feed them the first week with Barley sodden till it breek, and sod in such quantity that it may ever be given sweet: then after to feed them with raw malt from the floore, before it be dried, till they be fat enough: and then for a week after, to give them dry *pease* or *beanes* to harden their flesh. Let their drink be the washing of Hogsheads, or Ale barels, or

sweet Whay, and let them have store of thereof. This manner of feeding breeds the whitest, fattest, and best flesh that may be, as hath been approved by the best Husbands.

*The end of the Swine of all sorts.*

---

## *Of Conies.*

### CHAP. 1.

*Of the tame rich cony, his nature, choice, profit, and preservation.*

The nature of the cony.

ALL sorts of conies may as well be kept tame as Wild, and do above other beasts delight in imprisonment and solitarines, which proceedeth from the strength of melancholly in their nature, being creatures so much participationof the earth that their delight is to live in Holes, Rocks, and other dark Caverns. They are violently hot in the act of generation, and perform it with such vigour and excesse, that they swound & lie in trances a good space after the deed is done. The males are given to much cruelty, & would kil the yong rabbets if he could come to them: whence it proceedeth, that the Females after they have kindled, hide their yong ones, and close up their holes, so that the Buck-cony may not find them. The Female, or Doe-conies are wonderfull in their increase, and bring forth yong ones every month: therfore, when you keep them tame in boxes, you must observe to watch them, and as soon

ſoon as they have kindled, to put them to the buck, or otherwiſe they will mourn, and hardly bring up their young ones.

The boxes in which you ſhall keep yout tame *conies*, would be made of thin wainſcot boards, ſome two foot ſquare, and one foot high; and that ſquare muſt be divided into two rooms, a greater room with open windows of wyar, through which the *cony* may feed; and a leſſer room without light, in which the *cony* may lodge and kindle, and before them both a trough in which you may put meat, and other neceſſaries for the *cony*: and thus you may make box upon box in divers ſtories, keeping your bucks by themſelves, & your Does by themſelves, except it be ſuch Does as have not bred, and then you may let a Buck lodge with them; alſo when your Do hath kindled one neſt, & then kindeth another you you ſhal take the firſt from her, and put them together in a ſeverall box, amongſt Rabbits of their own age provided that the box be not peſtred, but that they may have eaſe and liberty. Of boxes for tame conies.

Now for the choice of theſe tame rich *conies* yon ſhall not as in another cattell, look to their ſhape but to their richneſſe, onely elect your Bucks, the largeſt, and goodlieſt *conies* you can get: and for the richneſſe of the skin, that is accounted the richeſt, which hath the equalleſt mixture of black & white hair together, yet the black rather ſhadowing the white, then the white any thing at al over maſtring the black, for a black skin with a few ſilver hairs is much richer then a white skin with a few black hairs: but as I ſaid before, to have them equally or indifferently mixt is the beſt above all other: the fur would be thick, deep, ſmooth, and ſhining, and a black coat without ſilver hairs though it be not reckoned Of the choice of rich conies.

ned a rich coat, yet it is to be preferred before a white, a pyed, a yellow, a dun, or a gray.

Of the profit of rich conies

Now for the profit of these rich *Conies*, (for unlesse they did far away, and by many degrees exceed the profit of all other *Conies*, they were not worthy the charge which must be bestowed upon them) it is this: First, every one of the rich *Conies* which are killed in season, as from *Martilmas* untill after *Candlemis*, is worth any five other *Conies*, for they are of body much fatter and larger, and when another skin is worth two pence or three pence at the most, they are worth two shillings, or two shillings six pence: Again, they increase oftner, and bring forth moe Rabbets at one kindling then any wild *Cony* doth; they are ever ready at hand for the dish, winter and Summer, without charge of Nets, Ferrets, or other Engines, and give their bodies *gratis*, for their skins will ever pay their masters charge with a most large interest.

Of the feeding and preservation of conies.

Now for the feeding and preservation of these rich *conies*, it is nothing so costly or troublesome as many have imagined, and as some ignorant in the skill of keeping them, have made the world think: for the best food you can feed a cony with, is the sweetest, shortest, softest, and best *Hay* you can get, of which one load will serve two hundred couples a year, and out of the flock of two hundred, you may spend in your House two hundred, and sell in the Market two hundred more, yet maintain the stock good, and answer every ordinary casualty. This Hay in little cloven sticks might with ease reach it and pull it out of the same, yet so as they may not scatter nor waste any. In the troughes under their Boxes, you shall put sweet *Oates* and their water, & this should be there ordinary & constant food where with

with you ſhall feed your *Conies*, for all other ſhould be uſed but Phiſically, as for the preſervation of their health: as thus, you ſhall twice or thrice in a fortnight for the cooling of their bodies, give them *Greenes*, as *Mallowes*, *Claver-graſſe*, *Sower-dockes*, blades of greene *corn*, *cabbage*, or *Colwort* leaves, and ſuch like, al which cooleth and nouriſheth exceedingly: ſome uſe to give them ſometimes ſweet *graines*, but that muſt be uſed very ſeldome, for nothing ſooner rotteth a *Cony*.

You muſt alſo have great care that when you cut any graſſe for them that are *weeds*, that there grow no young *Hemlocke* amongſt it, for though they will eat it with all greedineſſe, yet it is a preſent poyſon, and kils ſudeainly, you muſt alſo have an eſpeciall care every day to make their Boxes ſweet and clean, for the ſtrong ſavour of their ordure and piſſe is ſo violent, that it wil both annoy themſelves, and thoſe which ſhall be frequent amongſt them.

Now for the infirmities which are inſident unto them they are but two: the firſt is Rottenneſſe, which commeth by giving them too much green meat, or gathering their *greenes* and giving it them with the dew on; therefore let them have it but ſeldome, and then the drineſſe of the Hay will ever drink up the moiſture, knit them and keep them ſound without danger. Of the Rot in Conies.

The next is a certain rage or madneſſe, ingendred by corrupt bloud, ſprinkling from the ranks of their keeping; and you ſhal know it by their wallowing & tumbling with their heeles upward, and leaping in their boxes. The cure is, to give them *Hare thiſtle* to eat, and it will heal them. And thus much of the tame rich *Cony*, and his properties. Of madneſſe in conies.

*The end of the four footed Beaſts.*

THE

The ſecond Book.

# *Of Poultry.*

## CHAPTER. 1.

*Containing the ordering, fatting, cramming, and curing of all infirmities of Poultry, as Cocks, Hens, Chickens, Capons, Geeſe, Tunkies, Pheſants, Partridges, Quailes, Houſe-doves, and all ſorts of Fowl whatſoever. And firſt of the Dunghill-cock, Hen, Chicken, and Capon.*

SOme ſmal thing hath been written of thisnature before, but ſo drawn from theopinions of old writers, as *Italians*, *French*, *Dutch*, & ſuch like, that it hath no coherence or congruity with the practiſe and experience of Engliſh cuſtoms, both their Rules and climes being ſo different from ours, that except we were to live in their Countries, the rules which are printed are uſeleſs, & to no purpoſe. To let paſs then the opinion of Strangers, and come to our own home bred knowledge which is ſo mixed with all profitable experiments, that it needeth not the help of other Nations ſo much, as men would make us beleeve.

You ſhall underſtand that the dunghill-Cock (for the fighting Cock deſerveth a much larger and particular diſcourſe) is a Fowl of al other birds the moſt manlieſt, ſtately, and majeſticall, very tame and familiar with the Man, and naturally inclined to live and proſper in habitable Houſes: he is hot and ſtrong in the Act of generation, and wil ſerve ten Hens ſufficiently & ſome, twelve

and

and thirteen: he delighteth in open and liberall plaines, where he may lead forth his Hens in to green pastures and under hedges, where they may warm and bathe themselves in the Sun, for to be pent up in walled places, or in paved Courts is most unnaturall unto them, neither will they prosper therein.

Of the choice and shape of the Cock.

Now of the choice and shape of the dung hill-Cock, he would be of a large & wel sized body, long from the head to the rump, and thick in the garth; his neck would be long loose and curiously bending it, and his body together being straight, & high up erected, as the Faulcon and other birds of prey are, his comb wattles, and throat would be large, great compasse, ragged, and very Scarlet red, his eies round and great, the colour answering the colour of his plume or male, as gray with gray, red with red, or yellow with yellow, his bil would be crooked, sharp, & strongly set on to his head, the colour being sutable with the colour of feathers on his head, his main or neck feathers would be very long bright, and shining, covering from his head to his shoulders, his legs straight, and of a strong beame, with large long spurs, sharp & a litle bending, & the colour black yellow, or blewish, his claws short strong, and well wrinkled, his tail long and covering his body very closely, and for the generall colour of the dung-hill cock it would be red, for that is medicinal, and oft used in cullisses and restoratives. This Cock should be valiant within his own walk, and if he be a little knavish, he is so much the better, he would be oft crowing, and busie in scratching the earth to find out worms and other food for his Hens.

Of the hen her choice & shape

Now for the hen, if she be a good one, she should not differ much from the nature of the Cock, but be valiant,

liant, vigilant, and laborious both for her ſelf and her Chickens. In ſhape the biggeſt and largeſt are the beſt, every proportion anſwering theſe before deſcribed of the Cock, onely in ſtead of her Comb ſhe ſhould have upon her crown a high thich tuft of feathers: to have many & ſtrong claws is good, but to want hinder claws is better, for they oft break the Egs, & ſuch hens ſometimes prove unnatural, it is not good to chuſe a crowing Hen, for they are neither good breeder nor good laiers. If you chuſe hens to ſit, chuſe the elder, for they be conſtant, and will ſit out their times, and if yon wil chuſe Hens to lay, chuſe the youngeſt, for they are luſty and prone to the act of ingendring, but for neither purpoſe chuſe a fat hen, for if you ſet her, ſhe wil forſake her neſt and if you keep her to lay, ſhe will lay her egs without ſhels. Beſides, a fat hen, will waxe ſloathful, and neither delight in the one nor in the other Act of nature, ſuch hens then are ever fitter for the diſh then the hen houſe.

Of ſetting Henner.

The beſt time to ſet hens to have the beſt, largeſt, and moſt kindly Chickens, is in Febauary, in the increaſe of the Moon, ſo that ſne may hatch or diſcloſe her Chickens in the increaſe of the next new Moone, being in March, for one brood of March chickens is worth three broods of any other: you may ſet hens from March till October, and have good Chickens, but not after by any means, for the Winter is a great enemy to their breeding. A Hen doth ſit twenty one dayes juſt, and then hatcheth, but Peahens, Turkies, Geeſe, Ducks, and other water-fowl ſit thirty: ſo that if you ſet your hen as you may do upon any of their egs, you muſt ſet her upon them nine dayes before you ſet her upon her own. A Hen will cover nineteen Eggs well, and that is the moſt in true rule, ſhe ſhould cover, but upon what number ſoever

soever you set her, let it be odd, for the eggs will lie round, close, and in even proportion together: it is good when you lay your eggs first under your Hens, to mark the upper side of them, and then to watch the Hen, to see if she busie her self to turn them from the one side to the other, which if you find she doth not, then when she riseth from her eggs to feed or bathe her selfe, you must supply that office, and turn every Egge your selfe, and esteeme your Hen of so much the lesse reckoning for the use of breeding: be sure that the eggs which you lay under her, be new and sound, which you may know by their heavinesse, fulnesse, and cleernesse, if you hold them up betwixt the Sun and your eye-sight; you must by no means at any time raise your Hen from her nest, for that will make her utterly forsake it.

Choice of Egges.

Now for helping a Hen to hatch her eggs, or doing that which should be her office, it is unnecessary, and shall be much better to be forborn then any way used; or to make doubt of bringing forth, or to think the Hen sitteth too long, as many foolish curious Huswives do, if you be sure you set her upon sound eggs, is a frivolous; but if you set her upon unsound egges, then blame your self both of the losse and injury done to the Hen in her losse of labour.

A Hen will be a good sitter from the second year of her laying to the fift, but hardly any longer; you shall observe ever when your Hen riseth from her nest, to have meat and water ready for her, least straying to far to seek her food, she let her eggs cool too much, which is very hurtfull. In her absence you shall stire up the straw of her nest, and make it soft and handsom, & lay the egges in order, as she left them: do not in the selection of your Egges, chuse those which are monstrous

great,

great, for they many times have two yelkes, and though some write, *that such Eggs will bring out two chickens*, yet they are deceived; for if they bring forth two, they are commonly most abortive and monstrous: to perfume the nest with Brimstone is good, but with Rosemary is much better. To set Hens in the winter time in Stows or Ovens is of no use with us in *England*, and though they may by that means bring forth, yet will the chickens be never good nor profitable, *but like the planting of Lemon and Pomegranate trees the fruit will come a great deale short of the charges*. When your Hen at any time is absent from her nest, you must have great care to see that the Cock come not to sit upon the eggs (as he will offer to do) for he will indanger to break them, and make her love her nest worse.

A soon as your chickens be hatcht, if any be weaker then other, you shall lap them in *wooll*, and let them have the ayr of the fire, and it will strengthen them; *to perfume them with a little Rose-mary is very wholesome also*; and thus you may in a five keepe the first hatcht chickens till the rest be disclosed (*for Chickens would have no meat for two dayes*) and some shels being harder then other, they will take so much distance of time in opening: yet unlesse the chickens be weak, or the Hen rude, it is not amisse to let them alone under her, for she will nourish them most kindly: after two dayes is past, the first meat you give them should be very small Oatmeal, some dry, and some steept in milke, or else fine wheat bread crums, and after they have got strength then Curds, Cheese-parings, white bread crusts soak'd in Milk or Drink, Barley meal, or Wheat bread scalded, or any such like soft meat that is small, and will easily divided. It is good to keepe

Of chickens.

chickes

Chicks one fortnight in the houſe, and after to ſuffer them to go abroad with the Henne to worm, for that is very wholſome to chop green *Chyves* amongſt your chickens meat, will preſerve them from the Rye, and other diſeaſes in the head; neither muſt you at any time let your Chickens want water, for if they be forc'd to drink in puddles, it will breed the Pip: alſo, to feed upon *Tares*, *Darnell*, or *Cockell*, is very dangerous for young chickens.

Of feeding & cramming chickens

You may by theſe foods before ſaid, feed chickens very fat under their dams: but if you wil have fat cram'd chickens, you ſhal coop them up when the Dam forſaketh them, and the beſt crams for them is wheatmeal & milk, made into dough, and then the crams ſteeped in milk and ſo thruſt down their throats; but in any caſe, let the crams be ſmal, and wel wet for choaking, fourteen days wil feed a chicken ſufficiently: and thus much briefly for your breed.

Of preſerving egs.

Now, becauſe Egs of themſelves are a ſingular profit: you ſhall underſtand, that the beſt way to preſerve or keep them long, is, as ſome think, to lay them in good Straw, & cover them cloſe, but that is too cold, & beſides wil make them muſty: others wil lay them in bran but that is too hot, and will make them putrifie: and others will lay them in ſalt, but that makes them waſte and diminiſh: the beſt way then to keep them moſt ſweer, moſt ſound, and moſt full, is only to keep them in a heap of old Malt, cloſe and well covered all over.

Of gathering egs.

You ſhall gather your egges up once a day, and leave in the neſt but the neſt egge, and no more; and that would ever be in the after-noone, when you have ſeen every Henne come from her neſt ſeverally: ſome Hens

will by their cackling tell you when they have laid, but ſome will lay mute; *therefore you muſt let your own eye be your inſtructer.*

Of the Capon when to carve him.

Now touching the *Capon*, which is the guelt Cocke-chicken you ſhall underſtand, that the beſt time to carve or gueld him, is as ſoon as the Dam hath left them, if the ſtones be come down, or elſe as ſoon as they begin to crow: for the art of carving it ſelf, it is both common and eaſie, and much ſooner to be learned by ſeeing one carved, then by any demonſtration in writing.

A Capon to lead chickens.

Theſe Capons are of two uſes: the one is to lead chickens, Ducklings, young Turkies, Peahens, Pheſants, and Partriges, which he will do altogether, both naturally and kindly, and through largneſſe of his body, will brood or cover eaſily thirty or five and thirty; hee will lead them forth ſafely, and defend them againſt Kites or Buzzards, more better then the Hens: therefore the way to make him to take unto them is, with a fine ſmall brier, or elſe ſharp Nettles at night, to beat and ſting all his breaſts and nether parts, and then in the dark to ſeat the Chickens under him, whoſe warmth taketh away his ſmart; he will fall much in love with them, and whatſoever he proveth unkind, you muſt ſting, or beat him again, and this will make him he will never forſake them.

Of feeding or cramming Capons.

The other uſe of Capons is, to feed for the Diſh, as either at the Barn doors, with craps of corn, and the chavings of pulſe, or elſe in pens in the houſe, by cramming them, which is the moſt dainty: the beſt way then to cram a Capon *(ſetting all ſtrange inventions a part)* is to take Barley meal reaſonably ſifted, and mixing it with new milk, make it into a good ſtiffe dough; then make it into long crams, biggeſt in the midſt, and ſmal

at

at both ends, and then wetting them in luke-warme milk, give the Capon a full gorgefull thereof three times a day Morning, Noon, and Night, and he will in a fortnight or three weeks, be as fat as any man need to eat.

As for mixing their crams with sweet Wort, *Hogges-greaſe* or *Sallet-oyle*, they are by experience found to breed loath in the Birds, and not to feed at all, onely keep this Obſervation, not to give your Capon new meat untill the firſt be put over; and if you find your Capon ſomething hard of digeſtion, then you ſhall ſift you meal finer, for the finer your meal is, the ſooner it will paſſe through their bodies. And thus much for the Capon. Now for their infirmities, they follow in order.

## CHAP. 2.

### *Of the Pippe in poultry.*

THe Pippe is a white thin ſcale, growing on the tip of the tongue, and will make Poultry that they cannot feed: it is eaſie to be diſcerned, & proceedeth generally from drinking pudle water, from want of water, or from eating filthy meat. The cure is, to pul off the ſcale with your nayle, and the rub then tongue with ſalt. The Cure.

## CHAB. 3.

### *Of the roup in poultry.*

THe roup is a filthy bile or ſwelling on the Rump of Poultry, and wil corrupt the whole body. It is ordinarily known by the ſtaring & turning bac wards of the feathers, the cure is, to pull away the feathers, & opening the ſore to thruſt out the core, & then waſh the place with ſalt and water, or with Brine, and it helpeth. The Cure.

## CHAP. 4

### *Of the Flux in Poultry.*

THe flux in Poultry commeth with eating to much moiſt meat. The cure is, to give them Peaſe-bran
The Cure. ſcalded, and it will ſtay them.

## CHAP. 5

### *Of ſtopping in the belly.*

STopping in the bellies of Poultry, is contrary to the flux, ſo that they cannot mute: therfore you ſhal annoint their vents, and then give them either ſmal bits of bread, or corn ſteept in mans urine.

## CHAP. 6

### *Of Lice in Poultry.*

IF your Poultry be much troubled with Lice, as it is a cõmon infirmity, proceeding from corrupt food or want of bathing in ſand, aſhes or ſuch like: you ſhall take pepper ſmall beaten, and mixing it with warme water, waſh your Poultry therein, & it will kill all ſorts of vermine.

## CHAP. 7.

### *Of ſtinging with venomous wormes.*

IF your Poultry be ſtung with any venemous thing, as you may perceive by their lowring and ſwelling, you ſhal then annoint them with Rew, and Butter, mixt together, and it helpeth.

## CHAP. 8.

### *Of ſore eyes in Poultry.*

IF your poultry have ſore eyes, you ſhall take a leaſe or two of ground-ivy, and chawing it well in your mouth, ſuck out the juyce, and ſpit it into the ſore eye, and it will moſt aſſuredly heale it, as it hath been often tried.

CHAP.

## CHAP. 9.

### *Of Hens that crow.*

IF your Hens crow, which is an ill ſign and unnatural, you ſhall pull their wings, and give her to eat either Barley ſcorched, or ſmall wheat, and keep her cloſe from other Poultry.

## CHAP. 10.

### *Of Hens that eat their egs.*

IF your Hen will eat her Eggs, you ſhall onely lay for her neſt egg a piece of chalk cut like an egg, at which oft pecking and looſing her labour, ſhe will refraine the evill.

## CHAP. 11.

### *Of keeping a Hen from ſitting.*

IF you would not have your Hen ſit, you ſhall bathe her oft in cold water, & thruſt a ſmal feather through her noſtrils.

## CHAP. 12.

### *Of making Hens lay ſoone and oft.*

IF you feed your Hens often with toaſts taken out of Ale, with barley boyld, or ſpelted fitches, they will lay ſoon, oft, and all the Winter.

## CHAP. 13.

### *Of making Hens lean.*

BEcauſe fat hens commonly either lay their eggs without ſhels, or at the beſt hand lay very ſmall eggs: to keep them leane and in good plight for laying, you ſhal mixe both their meat & water with the powder of *tileſheards*, *chalk*, or elſe *tares*, twice or thrice a Week.

## CHAP. 14.

### *Of the Crow-trodden.*

IF your Hen be trodden with a carion Crow, or Rook, as oft they are, it is mortall and incurable, and you ſhal know it, by the ſtaring up of her feathers, and hanging of her wings, there is no way with her then, but preſently to kill her.

## CHAP. 15.

### *Of the Hen houſe, and the ſcituation.*

NOw for as much as no Poultry can be kept either in health or ſafety abroad, but muſt of force be houſed, you ſhal underſtand that your Hen-houſe would be large and ſpacious, with ſomewhat a high roof, the wals ſtrong both to keep out theeves and vermine, the windowes upon the Sun riſing, ſtrongly lathed, and cloſe ſhuts inward, round about the inſide of the wals upon the ground would be built large pens of three foot high, for Geeſe, Ducks, and great fowl to ſit in, near to the eavings of the houſe would be long Pearches, reaching from one ſide of the houſe to the other, on which ſhould ſit your Cockes Hennes Capons, and Turkies, each one ſeverall Pearches, as they are diſpoſed: at another ſide of the houſe in that part which is darkeſt over the ground pens, would be fixed hampers full of ſtraw for neſts in which your Hens ſhall lay their egs: but when they ſit to bring forth *Chickens*, then let them ſit on the ground, for otherwiſe it is dangerous, let there be pins ſtricken into the wals, ſo that your Poultry may climbe to their Pearches with eaſe: let the floore by no meanes be paved, but of earth, ſmooth and eaſie: let the ſmaller fowl have a hole at one end of the houſe made to come in and out at, when they pleaſe, or elſe they wil ſeeke rouſt in other places, and for the greater fowl the door

doore may be opened Evening and morning; this house should be placed either near some Kitchin, Brewhouse, or else some Kiln, where it may have air of the fire, and be perfumed with smoke, which to Pullen is delightful and wholesome. And thus much of the Cock, Hen, Capon, and Chicken.

## CHAP. 16.

### *Of Geese, their nature, choice, and how to breed them.*

GEese, are a fowl of great profit many ways, as first for food, next to their feathers and lastly for their grease. They are held of Husbandmen to be fowl of two lives, because they live both on land and water: and therefore all men must understand, that except he have either Pond or Streame, he can never keep Geese well. They are so watchful and carefull over themselves, that they will prevent most dangers: Grasse also they must necessarily have, & the worst, & that which is the most useleſſe is the best, as that which is mooriſh, rotten, and unsavory for cattle. To good grasse they are a great enemy, for their dung and treading will putrifie it, and make it then barren.

The choice of Geese.

Now for the choise of Geese, the largest is the best, and the colour would be white or gray, all of one pair, for pyde are not so profitable, and black are worse: your Gander would be knavish and hardy, for he will defend his Goslings the better.

Of laying egs and sitting.

Now for the laying of eggs, a Goose beginneth to lay in the spring, and she that layeth earliest is ever the best Goose, for she may have a second hatch, Geese wil lay twelve, and some sixteen egs, some will lay more, but it is seldome, and they cannot be all well covered, you shall know when your Goose wil lay, by her car-

ing of ſtraw up and down in her mouth, and ſcattering it abroad; and you ſhall know when ſhe will ſit by her continuing on the Neſt ſtill after ſhe hath layd. You muſt ſet a Gooſe upon her own egges, for ſhee will hardly or unkindly ſit one another Gooſes egs, as ſome imagine, but it is not ever certayne: You ſhall in her ſtraw when you ſet her, mixe nettle roots for it is good for the Goſlings: thirty dayes is the full time that a Gooſe ſitteth, but if the Weather be faire and warm, ſhe will hatch three or four days ſooner; ever when the Gooſe riſeth from the Neſt, you ſhall give her meat, as skegge Oates, and Branne ſcalded and give her leave to bathe in the Water. After ſhe hath hatched her Goſlings, you ſhall keep them in the houſe tenne or twelve dayes, and feed them with curds, ſcalded chippings, or Barley-meal in milk knodden and broken, alſo ground Malt is exceeding good, or any Bran that is ſcalded in water milk, or tappings of drinke. After they have got a little ſtrength, you may let them go abroad with a keeper five or ſixe houres in a day, and let the dam at her pleaſure intice them into the water; then bring them in, and put them up, and thus order them till they be able to defend themſelves from vermine. After a Goſling is a month or ſixe weeks old, you may put it up to feed for a green Gooſe, and it will be perfectly fed in another month following: and to feed them, there is no meat better then skegge Oates boyld, and give plenty thereof thrice a day, Morning, Noone, and Night, with good ſtore of milk, or milk and water mixt together to drink.

The ordering of Goſlings.

Of greene Geeſe & their fatting.

Now you ſhal underſtand one Gander wil ſerve wel five Geeſe, & to have not above forty Geeſe in a flock is beſt, for to have more is both hurtfull & troubleſõe.

Of Garders.

Now

Now for the fatting of elder Geese which are those which are five or six months old, you shal understand that after they have been in the stubble fields, and during the time of Harvest got into good flesh, you shall then chuse out such Geese as you will feed, & put them in severall pens which are close and dark, and there feed them thrice a day with good store of Oats, or spelted Beans, & give them to drink water & barley-meal mixt together, which must evermore stand before them, this will in three weekes feed a Goose so fat as is needfull. Fatting of elder Geese.

Now lastly, for the gathering of a Gooses feathers, you shall understand, that howsoever some writers advise you for a needles profit to pull your Goose twice a year, *March* and *August*: yet certainly it is very nought and ill, for first, by disabling the flight of the Goose, you make her subject to the cruelty of the Fox, and other ravenous beasts: and by uncloathing her in Winter you strike that cold into her body, which kils her very suddainly, therefore it is best to stay till moulting time or till you kill her, and then you may imploy all her feathers at your pleasure, either for beds, fletchers, or Scriveners. Of gathering Geese feathers

For the diseases and infirmities in Geese, the most and worst they are subject unto, is the *Gargill*, which is a mortall or deadly stopping of the head. And the ordinary and certain cure is, to take three or four cloves of Garlicke, and beating them in a morter with sweet Butter, make little long bals thereof, and give two or three of them to the Goose fasting, and then shut her up for two houres after. Of the Gargil in Geese. The Cure.

CHAP.

## CHAP. 17.

### *Of Turkies, their nature, use, increase, and breeding.*

TUrkies, howsoever by some writers they are held devourers of corn, straiers abroad, ever puling for meat, & many such like fained troubles, as if they were utterly unprofitable, yet its certain they are most delicate, either in Paste, or from the spit, and being fat, for exceeding any other house-foule whatsoever: nay, they are kept with more ease and lesse cost: for they wil take more paines for their food then any other Bird, onely they are enimies to a garden, & from thence must ever be kept. They, when they are young are very tender to bring up, both because they have a straying nature in themselves, and the dams are so negligent that whilst she hath one following her, she never respecteth the rest therefore they must have a vigilant keeper to attend them, till they can shift for themselves, & then they wil flock together, & seldome be parted. Til you fat them, you need not take care for food for them; they love to roost in trees, or other high places.

Of the choice of the Turky-cocke.

Now for your choice of such as you would breed on; your Turky Cock would not be above two yeare old at most, be sure that he be loving to the Chickens, and for your Hen, she will lay til she be five yeer old, and upward. Your Turky-cock would be a bird large, stout, proud, & majesticall, for when he walketh dejected, he is never good treader.

Of the Turky hen her sitting

The Turky hen, if she be not prevented, will lay her eggs in secret places, therefore you must watch her, and bring her to your Hen-house; and there compell her to lay. They begin to lay in March and wil sit in April, and eleven eggs, or thirteen, is the most they should

ſhould cover: they hatch ever betweene five and twenty and thirty dayes, when they have hatcht their broods be ſure to keep the *Chicks* warm, for the leaſt cold kils them, and feed them either with curds, or greene freſh cheeſe cut in ſmall pieces. Let their drink be new milk, or milk and Water: you muſt be carefull to feed them oft; for the Turky hen will not like the Houſe-hen, call her chickens to feed them. When your Chicks have got ſtrength, you ſhall feed them abroad in ſome cloſe walled graſſe-plat, where they cannot ſtray: or elſe ever be at charge of a Keeper. The dew, is moſt hurtfull unto them, therefore you muſt houſe them at night, and let them abroad after Sun riſe in the morning.

Now for the fatting of Turkies, ſodden Barly is excellent, or ſodden oates for the firſt fortnight, and then for another fortnight, cram them in all ſorts as you cram your Capon, and they wil be fat beyond meaſure. Now for their infirmities, when they are at liberty, they are ſuch good Phiſitians for themſelves that they will never trouble their owners, but being coopt up; you muſt cure them as is before deſcribed for Pullen. Their egs are exceeding wholeſome to eat, and reſtore nature decayed wonderfully. *Of feeding Turkies.*

## CHAP. 18.

### *Of the Duck, and ſuch water Fowles.*

THe tame Duck is an exceeding neceſſary fowl for the Husbandmans yard, for ſhe asketh no charge in keeping but liveth of corn loſt, or other things of leſſe profit. She is once in a year a very great layer of Egs, and when ſhe ſitteth ſhe craves both attēdance and feeding: for being reſtrained from ſeeking her food, ſhe muſt be helped with a little barley, or other, over cha-

ving

ning of corne, such as else you would give unto Swine, as for her sitting, hatching and feeding of her Ducklings, it is in all points to be observed in such manner as you did before with the Goose, onely after they are abroad they will shift better for their food then Goslings will. For the fatting of Ducks or Ducklings, you may do it in three weeks, by giving them any kind of Pulse or Grain, and good store of water.

Of Wild-Duckes, and their order in dg.

If you will preserve wild Ducks, you must wall in a little piece of ground, in which is some little pond or Spring, & cover the top of it all over with a strong Net: the pond must be set with many tufts of Oziers, & have many secret holes & creeks in, for that wil make them delight and feed though imprisoned. The wild-Duck when she layeth, will steal from the Drake, & hide her nest, for he else wil suck the egs. When she hath hatcht she is most carefull to nourish them, and needeth no attendance more then meat, which would be given fresh twice a day, as scalded Bran, Oats or Fitches. The house Hen will hatch wild Ducks egs, and the meat will be much the better, yet every time they go into the water they are in danger of the Kite, because the Hen cannot guard them, in the same manner as you nourish wild-Ducks, so you may nourish Teiles, Widgens, Sheldrakes or green Plovers.

## CHAP. 19.

### *Of Swans and their feeding.*

TO speak of the breeding of Swans is needlesse, because they can better order themselves in that businesse then any man can direct them, onely where they build their Nests, you shall suffer them to remain undisturbed, and it will be sufficient: but for the feeding of them fat for the dish, you shal feed your Cygnets in all sorts

sorts as you feed your Geese, and they will be thorow fat in seven or eight weeks, either chopt in the house, or else walking abroad in some privat court; but if you would have them fat in shorter space, then you shal feed them in some pond, hedg'd or pail'd in for the purpose, having a little dry ground left where they may sit and prune themselves, & you may place two troughs, one full of Barley & Wter, the other ful of old dried Malt, on which they may feed at their pleasure, and thus doing, they wil be fat in lesse then four weeks: for by this means a Swan keepeth himself neat, and clean, who being a much defiled bird, liveth in dry places so uncleanly that they cannot prosper, unlesse his attender be diligent to dresse and trimme his walk every hour.

## CHAP. 20.

### *Of Peacocks, and Peahens, their increase and ordering.*

PEacocks, howsoever our old writers are pleased to deceive themselves in their praises, are birds more to delight the eie by looking on them, then for any particular profit; the best cõmodity arising from them, being the cleansing and keeping of the yard free from venomous things as Toads, Newts, and such like, which is their daily food: whence it comes, that their flesh is very unwholesome, and used in great banquets more for the rareneſſe then the nourishment. for it is most certaine, roast a Peacock or Peahen never so dry, then set it up, and look on it the next day, and it will be blood raw, as if it had not been roasted at all.

The Peahen loves to lay her egs abroad in bushes and hedges, where the Cocke may not find them, for if he do, he will break them; therefore as soon as she begins

gins to lay, seperate her from the Cock, and house her till she have brought forth her young, and that the cronet of feathers begin to rise at their foreheads, and then turn them abroad, and the Cock will love them, but not before. A Peahen sits just thirty days, & in her sitting any grain, with water, is food good enough before your Chickens go abroad, you shall feed them with fresh green Cheese, and Barley-meal, with water; but after they go abroad, the Dam will provide for them. The best time, to set a Peahen is at the beginning of the Moone, and if you set Hen-egs amongst her egs, she will nourish both equally. These Pea-chickens are very tender, and the least cold doth kill them, therefore you must have care to keep them warm, & not to let them go abroad but when the Sun shineth. Now for the feeding of them, it is a labour you may well save, for if they go in a place where there is any corn stirring, they will have part, and being meat which is seldome or never eaten, it mattereth not so much for their fatting.

## CHAP. 21.

### *Of the tame Pidgeon, or ruff footed.*

THe tame rough footed Pidgeon differs not much from the wild Pidgeon, onely they are some what bigger and more familiar, apt to be tame; they commonly bring not forth above one pair of Pidgeons at a time, & those which are the least of body are ever the best breders, they must have their rooms & boxes made clean once a week, for they delight much in neatnesse, & if the wals be outwardly whited or painted, they love it the better, for they delight much in fair buildings. They will bring forth their young ones once a month if they be well fed, & after they be well paird they wil never

never be divided. The Cock is a very loving and naturall Bird, both to his Hen and the young ones, and will ſit the egs while the Hen feedeth, as the Hen ſits whileſt he feedeth: he will alſo feed the young with as much painfulneſſe as the dam doth, and is beſt pleaſed when he is brooding them. Theſe kind of Pidgeons you ſhall feed with white Peaſe, Tares and good ſtore of clean water. In the room where they lodge you ſhall ever have a ſalt Cat for them to peck on, & that which is gathered from Saltpeter is the beſt: alſo they would have good ſtore of dry Sand, gravel and Pybble, to bath and cleanſe themſelves withal, and above all things great care taken, that no vermin, or other Birds come into their Boxes, eſpecially Sterlings, and ſuch like, whic are great Eg-ſuckers. And thus muce of the tame Pidgeon.

## CHAP. 22.

### *Of nouriſhing and fatting hearnes, Puets, Guls, and Bitters.*

HEarns are nouriſhed for two cauſes; either for Princes ſports to make trains for the entring their Hawkes or elſe to furniſh on the table at great feaſts: the maner of bringing them up with the leaſt charge, is to take them out of their neſts before they can fly, & put them into a large high barn, where there is many high and croſſe beams for them to pearch on: then to have on the floor divers ſquare boards with rings in them, and between every board which would be two yards ſquare, to place round ſhallow tubs full of water; then to the boords you ſhall ty great gobbets of dogs fleſh, cut from the bones, acording to the number which you feed: and be ſure to keep the houſe ſweet, and ſhift the

water

water oft, onely the house must be made so that it may rain in now and then, in which the Hearn will take much delight. But if you feed her for the dish, then you shall feed them with Livers, and the intralls of Beasts, and such like, cut in great gobbets; and this manner of feeding will also feed either Gull, Puet, or Bitter: but the Bittet is ever best to be fed by the hand, because when you have fed him, you may tye his beake together, or he will cast up his meat again.

## CHAP. 23.

### *Of feeding the Partridge, Pheasant, and Quaile.*

THese three are the most daintiest of all other birds, and for the Phesant or Partridge you may feed them both in one room where you may have little boxes where they may run and hide themselves in divers corners of the room; then in the midst you shall have three wheat sheaves, two with their ears upward, and one with the ears downward, and near unto them shallow tubs with water, that the Fowle may peck the wheat out of the eares, and drink at their pleasures, and by this manner of feeding you shall have them as fat as is possible: as for your Quailes, the best feeding them is in long flat shallow boxes, each boxe able to hold two or three dozen, the formost side being set with round pins so thicke that the Quaile do no more but put out her head, then before that open side, shall stand one trough ful of small chilter-wheat, another with water, and thus in one fortnight or three weeks you shal have them exceeding fat.

## CHAP. 24.

### *Of Godwits, Knots, Gray-plover, or Curlewes.*

FOr to feed any of these fowles which are esteemed of all other the daintiest and deerest, fine Chilter-

wheat

wheat, and water given them thrice a day. Morning, Noon, and Night, will do it very effectually; but if you intend to have them extraordinary and crammed fowl, then you ſhall take the fineſt dreſt wheat-meale, and mixing it with milk, make it into paſte, and ever as you knead it, ſprinkle into it the grains of ſmal *chiltet-wheat*, till the paſte be fully mixt therewith; then make little ſmal crams thereof, and dipping them in water, give to every fowl according to his bigneſſe, and that his gorge be well filled: do thus as oft as you ſhall find their gorges empty, and in one fortnight they will be fed beyond meaſure, and with theſe crams you may feed any fowl, of what kind or nature ſoever.

## CHAP. 25.

### *Of feeding Black-birds, Thruſhes, Felfares, or any ſmall Birds whatſoever.*

TO feed theſe Birds, being taken old and wild, it is good to have ſome of their kinds tame to mixe among them, and then putting them into great Cages of three or four yards ſquare, to have divers troughs placed therein, ſome filled with Haws, ſome with Hempſeed, and ſome with water, that the tame teaching the wild to eat, and the wild finding ſuch change and alteration of food, they will in 12. or 14. dayes grow exceeding fat, and fit for the uſe of the Kitchin.

*The end of the Poultry.*

# *Of Hawkes.*

## CHAP. 1.

*Of the generall Cures for all Diſeaſes and Infirmities in Hawkes, whether they be ſhort winged Hawkes, or long winged Hawks; and firſt of Caſtings.*

*Hawkes* are divided into two kind, that is to ſay, ſhort winged Hawks; as the Goshawk, and her Tercell, the Sparrow-Hawk and her Musket, & ſuch like, whoſe wings are ſhorter then their trains, and do belong to the Oſtringer: and long winged *hawkes* as the Faulcon-gentle, and her Tercell, the Gerfaulcon and Jerkin, the Lanner, Merlin, Hobby, and divers others. Now, foraſmuch as their infirmities for the moſt part, proceed from the indiſcretion of their Governours, if they flie them out of ſeaſon before they be inſeamed & have the fat, glut, and filthineſs of their bodies ſcoured and cleanſed out, I think it not amiſſe firſt to ſpeak of *Hawkes* caſtings, which are the naturalleſt and gentleſt purges or ſcourings a *Hawk* can take, and doth the leaſt offend the vitall parts. Therefore, you ſhall know, that all Oſtringers do eſteem plumage, and the ſoft feathers of ſmal Birds, with ſome part of the skin to be the beſt caſting a ſhort winged *hawk* can take; and for the purging of her head, to make her tyer much upon ſheeps Rumps, the fat cut away, and the bones well covered with parcely. But for long winged *Hawks*, the beſt caſting is fine Flannell, cut into ſquare pieces of an inch

and

and a half ſquare, and all to jagged, and ſo given with a little bit of meat. By theſe caſtings, you ſhall know the ſoundneſs and unſoundneſs of your Hawk: forwhen ſhe hath caſt, you ſhall take up the caſting, which will be like a hard round pellet, ſomewhat long, and preſſe it between your fingers, and if you find nothing but cleer water come from it, then it is a ſign your Hawk is ſound and luſty; if their come from it a yellowiſh or filthy matter, or if it ſtink, it is a ſign of rottenneſs and diſeaſe; but if it be greazy or ſlimy on the one ſide, then it is a ſign the Hawk is full of greaſe inwardly, which is not broken nor diſſolved: and then you ſhal giue her a ſcouring, which is a much ſtronger purgation, and of ſcourings the gentleſt, next caſting, is to take four or five pellets of the yellow root of Selladine well cleanſed from filth, being as big as great peaſe, and give them out of water early in a morning when the Hawke is faſting, and it will cleanſe her mightily.

If you take theſe pellets of Selladine, and give them out of the *oyl of Roſes*, or out of the *ſirrup of Roſes*, it is a moſt excellent ſcouring alſo, onely it will for an houre or two make the Hawke ſomewhat ſickiſh. If you give your Hawk a little *Aloes Cicatrine*, as much as a Beane, wrapt up in her meat, it is a moſt ſoveraign ſcouring, and doth not onely avoid Greaſe, but alſo killeth all ſorts of worms whatſoever.

If your Hawk by over-flying, or too ſoon flying, be heated and inflamed in her body, as they are much ſubject thereunto: you ſhall then to cool their bodies' give them Stones. Theſe Stones are very fine white pibbles, lying in the Sands of gravelly Rivers, the bigneſs whereof you may chuſe according to the bigneſſe of your Hawke, as ſome no bigger then a Beane, and

thoſe be for *Merlins* or *Hobbies*, ſome as big as two Beans, and they are for Faulcons gentle, Lanners, and ſuch like; and ſome much bigger then they, which are for Gerfaulcons, or ſuch like. And theſe ſtones if they be full of creſts and welts, they are the better, for the rougheſt ſtone is the beſt, *ſo it be ſmooth, and not greety.* And you ſhall underſtand, that *ſtones* are moſt proper for long-wing'd-hawks, and the number which you ſhal give at the moſt muſt never exceed 15. for 7 is a good number, ſo is 9 or 11. according as you find the hawks heat, more or leſſe: and theſe *ſtones* muſt ever be given out of fair water, having before very well pickt and trim'd from all durt or filthineſſe. And thus much of *Hawkes* caſtings, ſcourings, and ſtones.

## CHAP. 2.

### *Of Impoſtumes in Hawkes.*

IF your *Hawke* have any impoſture riſing upon her, which is apparent to be ſeen, you ſhal take ſweet *Raiſins*, and boyl them in Wine, and then cruſhing them, lay them warm to the ſore, and it will both ripen and heal it: only it ſhall be good to ſcoure your *Hawk* very well inwardly, for that will abate the fluxe of all evill humours.

## CHAP. 3.

### *Of all ſorts of ſore eyes.*

FOr any ſore eye, there is nothing better then to take the juyce of ground Ivie, and drop it into the eye. But if any web be grown before you, uſe this medicine, then you ſhall take Ginger finely ſearſt, and blow it into the eye, and it will break the web, then uſe the juyce of Ivie, and it will wear it away.

CHAP.

## CHAP. 4.

### *Of the Pontas in Hawkes.*

THe Pantas is a ſtopping or ſhortneſſe of winde in *Hawkes*, and the cure is, to give her the ſcowring of Selladine, and the oyl of Roſes, and then to waſh her meat in the decoction of *Colts-foot*, and it will help her.

## CHAP. 5.

### *Of caſting the gorge.*

THis is when a *Hawk*, either through meat which ſhe cannot digeſt, or through ſurfet in feeding, caſteth up the meat which ſhe hath eaten, which is moſt dangerous. And the only way to cure her, is to keepe her faſting, and to feed her with a very little at once of warm bloudy meat, as not above half a Sparrow at a time, and be ſure never to feed her again, till ſhe have indued the firſt.

## CHAP. 6.

### *Of all ſorts of Worms, or Fylanders in Hawkes.*

WOrms or Fylanders, which are a kidd of *Worms* in *Hawks*, are either inward or outward: inward, as in the guts or intrales; or outward, as in any joynt or member: if they be inward, the ſcowring of Aloes is excellent to kill them; but if they be outward, then you ſhall bathe the place with the juyce of the hearb *Ameos* mixt with *honey*.

## CHAP. 7.

### *Of all ſwelling in Hawks feet, and of the pin in thee foot.*

FOr the pin in the ſole of the Hawkes foot: or for any ſwelling upon the *foot, whether it be ſoft or hard*, there is not any thing more ſoveraign, then to bath it in *Patch-greaſe* moulten, and applied to exceeding hot,

and then to fold a fine Cambrick rag dipt in the same greaſe about the ſore.

## CHAP. 8.

### *Of the breaking of a pounce.*

The Cure. THis is a very dangerous hurt in Hawks, eſpecially in *Gerfaulcons*; for if you ſhal break or rive her pounce, or but coape it ſo ſhort that ſhee bleed, though it be very little, yet it will indanger her life: the cure therefore is preſently upon the hurt, *with a hot wyar to ſear it, till the bloud ſtanch, and then to drop about it pitch of Burgundy, and wax mixt together*, or for want thereof, a little hard Marchants wax, and that will both heal it, and make the Pounce grow.

## CHAP. 9.

### *Of bones broke, or out of joynt.*

IF your Hawke have any bone broke or miſplaced, you ſhall after you have ſet it, bath it with the oyle of *Mandrag* and *Swallowes*, mixt together, and then ſplent it, and in nine dayes it will be knit and have gotten ſtrength.

## CHAP. 10.

### *Of inward bruiſings in* Hawkes.

IF your Hawk either by ſtooping amongſt trees, or by the incounter of ſome *fowl*, get any inward bruiſe, which you ſhall know by the blackneſs or bloudineſſe of their mutes, *you ſhall then annoint her meat every time you feed her with Sperma-Cœtæ, till her mutes bee clear again, and let her meat be warm and bloudy.*

## CHAP. 11.

### *Of killing of Lice.*

IF your Hawk be troubled with lice, which is a gerall infirmity, and apparent, for you ſhall ſee them creep all over on the outſide of her fethers, if ſhe ſtand

but

but in the ayr of the fire. You shall bath her all over in warm water and pepper small beaten; but be sure that the water be not too hot; for that is dangerous, neither that it touch her eyes.

## CHAP. 12.

### *Of the Rye in* Hawkes.

THis disease of the Rye in Hawkes proceedeth from two causes; *the one is cold and poze in the head, the other is foul and most uncleanly feeding, the Faulconer being negligent to seake and cleanse his hawkes beake and nares, but suffering the bloud and filthinesse of meat to sticke and cleave thereunto.* For indeed, the infirmity is nothing else but a stopping up of the nares: by meanes whereof, the Hawke not being able to cast and avoid the corruption of her head, it turns to putrifaction, and in short space kills the Hawk: and this disease is a great deale more incident to short winged Hawkes then to loug. The signs whereof are apparant by the stopping of the nares. the cure is, to let your Hawk tyer much vpon sinewie and bony meat, as the rumps of Mutton (the fat being taken away) or the pinions of the wings of fowl, either being well lapt in a good handfull of *Parsley* and forcing her to strain hard in the tearing of the same, and with much diligence to cleanse and wash her beak clean with water after her feeding especialy if her meat were warm and bloudy. The Cure.

## CHAP. 13.

### *Of the Frounce.*

THe Frounce is a cankerous ulcer in a *Hawks* mouth, got by over-flying, or other inflamation proceeding from the in ward parts, foul & unclean food is also a great ingenderer of this disease. The signs are a sorenes in the *Hawks* mouth, which sore will be fur'd and co-

ver'd over with white ſcurf, or ſuch like filthineſs; alſo if the Ulcer be deep and ill, the *Hawke* will winde and turn her head awrie, making her beak ſtand upright: and the cure is to take *Allome*, and having beaten it to fine powder, mixe it with ſtrong Wine-vinegar, till it be ſomewhat thick, *and then waſh and rub the ſore there, with till it be raw, and that the ſcurf be clean taken away.* Then take the juyce of *Lolljam*, and the juyce of *Radiſh*, and mixing it with Salt, annoint the ſore therewith, and in few dayes it will cure it.

## CHAP. 14.

### *Of the Rhume.*

THe Rhume is a continuall running or dropping at the Hawks nares, proceeding from a generall cold, or elſe from over-flying, and then a ſudden cold taken thereupon, it ſtoppeth the head, and breeds much corruption therein, and the ſigns are, the dropping beforeſaid, and a generall heavineſſe, and ſomtimes a ſwelling of the head. The cure is, *to take the juyce of Beets, and ſquirt it oft into the Hawkes nares.* Then when you feed her, waſh her meat in the juyce of *Broomewort*, and it will quickly purge, and ſet her ſound.

## CHAP 15.

### *Of the Fornicas in Hawkes.*

THe Fornicas in *Hawkes* is a hard horn growing upon the beake of a *Hawke*, ingendered by a poyſonous and cankerous worm, which fretting the skin and tender yellow welt between the head and the beake, occaſioneth that hard horn or excreſſion to grow and offend the bird: the ſign is the apparant ſight of the horn, and the cure is, *to take a little of a Buls gall, and beating it with Aloes, annoint the Hawkes beake therewith morning*

ning *and* evening, *and it will in very few dayes take the horn away.*

## CHAP. 16.

### *Of the Fiſtula in Hawkes.*

THe Fiſtula in *Hawks* is a cankerous hollow ulcer in any part of a Hawkes body, as it is in mens, beaſts, or any other creature: the ſigns are a continuall mattering, or running of the ſore, and a thin ſharp water like lie, which as it fals from the ſame will fret the ſound parts as it goeth: the cure is with a fine ſmall wyar, little ſtronger then a *virginal wyar*, and wrapt cloſe about with a ſoft ſleaved ſilk, & the point blunt and ſoft, to ſearch the hollowneſs and crookedneſs of the vicer, which the pliantneſſe of the wyar will eaſily do; *and then having found out the bottome thereof, draw forth the wyar, and according to the ligneſſe of the Orifice, make a tent of fine lint being wet, which may likewiſe bend as the wyar did, and be within a very little as long as the ulcer is deep, for to tent it to the full length is ill, and will rather increaſe then diminiſh the Fiſtula, and therefore ever as the Fiſtula heales, you muſt take the tent ſhorter and ſhorter.* But to the purpoſe, *when you have made your tent fit, you ſhall firſt take ſtrong Allome water, and with a ſmall ſeringe ſquirt the ſore three or four times therewith, for that will cleanſe, dry, and ſcour every hollowneſſe in the vicer*: then take the tent and annoint it with the juyce of the hearb *Roberte*, *vinegar*, and *Allome* mixt together, and it will dry up the ſore. The Cure.

## CHAP. 17.

### *Of the privie evill in* Hawkes.

THe privie evill in Hawkes is a ſecret heart ſickneſſe, procured either by over-flying, corrupt food, cold,

or

or other diſorderly keeping, but moſt eſpecialy for want of ſtones or caſting in the due ſeaſon: the ſigns are heavineſſe of head, and countenance, evil enduing of her meat, and foul black mutings. The cure is to take morning & evening a good piece of a warm Sheeps heart, and ſteeping it either in new Aſſes-milk or new Goats milk, or for want of both, the new milk of a red Cow, with the ſame to feed your *Hawk*, till you ſee her ſtrength and luſt recovered.

## CHAP. 18.
### *Of wounds in Hawkes.*

HAwks by the croſſe incounters of fowls eſpecialy the Heron, by ſtooping amongſt buſhes, thorns, trees, and by divers ſuch accidents, doe many times catch ſore & moſt grievous wounds; the ſigns whereof are the outward apparence of the ſame. And the cure is, if they be long and deep, and in place that you may conveniently, firſt to ſtitch them up, and then to ta int, them up with a little ordinary *Balſamum*, and it is a preſent remedy. But if it be in ſuch a place as you cannot come to ſtich it up, you ſhal then onely take a litle *lint* and dip it in the juice of the hearb called *Mouſeare*, & apply it to the ſore, and it will ſhort ſpace heal it. But if it be in ſuch a place as you can by no means bind any thing thereunto, you ſhal then onely annoint or bath the place with the aforeſaid juyce, and it wil heal and dry up the ſame in very ſhort time; the juyce of the green hearb called with us, *Engliſh Tobacco*, will likewiſe do the ſame: for it hath a very ſpeedy courſe in healing and cleanſing, as hath been approved by divers of the beſt Faulconers of this kingdom, & other natiõs.

CHAP.

## CHAP. 19.

### *Of the Appoplexie, or falling evill in Hawkes.*

THe Appoplexy or falling evil of Hawks, is a certain vertigo or dizineſſe in the brain, proceeding from the oppreſſion of cold humours, which do for a certain ſpace numb, & as it were mortifie the ſenſes: the ſigns are a ſuddain turning up the Hawks head, and falling from her pearch without bating, but onely with a generall trembling over all the body, and lying ſo, as it were in a trance a little ſpace. ſhee preſently recovereth, and riſeth up again, but is ſick and heavy many hours after. The cure therefore is to gather the hearb *Aſterion* when the Moon is in the Wain, and in the ſigne *Virgo*, and taking the juyce thereof to waſh you Hawks meat therein, and ſo feed her, and it hath been found a moſt ſoveraign medicine. The Cure.

## CHAP. 20.

### *Of the purging of Hawkes.*

THere is nothing more needfull to Hawks then purgatiõs & cleãſings; for they are much ſubject to fat & foulneſs of body inwardly, & their exerciſe being much and violent, if there be neglect, and that their glut be not taken away, it will breed ſickneſſe and death; therefore it is the part of every skilful Faulcõer to underſtand how, & when to purge his Hawk, which is generally ever before ſhe be brought to flying: and the moſt uſualleſt ſeaſon for the ſame, is before the beginning of *Autumne*; for commonly knowing Gentlemen will not fly at the Partridge till corn be from the ground; and if he prepare for the River early, he will likewiſe begin with that ſeaſon: the beſt purgation then that you can give your *Hawk* is *Aloes Cicatrine* wrapt up in warme meat, the quantity of a French Peaſe,

peaſe, and ſo given the *Hawk* to eat ever the next morning after ſhe hath flown at any train, or taken other exerciſe, whereby ſhe might break or diſſolve the greaſe within her.

## CHAP. 21.

### *For a Hawk that cannot mute.*

IF your *Hawk* cannot mute, as it is a common infirmity which happeneth unto them, you ſhall take the lean of pork, being newly kild, whileſt it is warme, to the quantity of two Wall-nuts, and lapping a little *Aloes* therein, give it to the *Hawk* to eat, and it wil preſently help her. There be divers good Faulconers in this caſe, which will take the roots of *Selandine*, and having cleanſed it, and cut it into little ſquare pieces as big as peaſe, ſteep it in the oyl of Roſes, and ſo make the *Hawk* ſwallow down three or four of them, and ſure this is very good and wholeſome, only it wil make the *Hawk* exceeding ſick for two or three hours after. Neither muſt the *Hawk* be in any weak ſtate of body, when this latter medicine is given her. Alſo, you muſt obſerve to keepe your *Hawke* at thoſe times exceeding warm, and much on your fiſt, and to feed her moſt with warm Birds, leaſt otherwiſe you clung and dry up her intrales too much, which is both dangerous and mortall.

## CHAP. 22.

### *The aſſuredſt ſign to know when a Hawk is ſicke.*

HAwkes are generally of ſuch a ſtout, ſtrong, and unyeelding nature, that they will many times cover & conceal their ſickneſſes ſo long til they be grown to that extremity, that no help of phyſicke, or other knowledge can availe for their ſafeties: for when the countenance, or decay of ſtomack, which are the ordi-

nary

nary outward faces of infirmities appear, then commonly is the diſeaſe paſt remedy: therefore to prevent that evill, and to know ſickneſſe whileſt it may be cured, you ſhall take your *Hawke*, and turning up her train, if you ſee that her tuell or fundament either ſwelleth or looketh red, or if her eys or nares likewiſe be of a fiery complexion, it is a moſt infallible ſigne that the *Hawk* is ſick, and much out of temper.

## CHAP. 23.

### *Of the Fever in Hawkes.*

*Hawkes* are as much ſubject to Fevers, as any creatures whatſoever, and for the moſt part they proceed from over-flying, or other extraordinary heates, mixt with ſudden colds, given them by the negligence of unskilfull Keepers; and the cure is, *to ſet her in a coole place, upon a pearch, wrapt about with her cloaths, & feed her oft with a little at a time of Chickens fleſh ſteeped in water, wherein hath been ſoaked Cowcumber ſeeds. But if you find by the ſtopping of her nares or head, that ſhee is offended more with cold then heat, then you ſhall ſet her in a warme place, and feed her with the bloudy fleſh of* Pigeons, *waſht either in white wine, or in water, wherein hath been boyled either Sage, Marjoram, or Camomill.* The cure.

## CHAP. 23.

### *To help a Hawk that cannot digeſt her meat.*

IF your *Hawk* be hard of digeſtion, and neither can turn it over, nor empty her panel, which is very often ſeen, you ſhall then take the heart of a Frog, and thruſt it down into her throat, and pull it back againe by a thread faſtned thereunto once or twice ſuddenly, and it will make her caſt her gorge preſently.

CHAP.

## CHAP. 25.

### *Of the Gout in Hawkes.*

*Hawkes*, eſpecially thoſe which are free and ſtrong ſtrikers, are infinitly ſubject to the Gout, which is a ſwelling, knotting, and contracting of a *Hawkes* feet. The cure therof is, to take two or three drops of bloud from her thigh vein, a little above her knee, & then annoint her feet with the juyce of the hearb *Hollyhock*, and let all her pearch be annointed alſo with tallow, and the juyce of that hearb mixt together. Now, if this Diſeaſe (as oft it happeneth) be in a *Hawkes* wing, then you ſhal take two or three drops of bloud from the vein under her wing, and then annoint the pinions and inſide thereof with *Vnguenthum de Althea* made very warme, which you may buy of every Apothecary.

## CHAP. 26.

### *Of the ſtaunching of bloud.*

IT is a knowne experience amongſt the beſt Faulconers, that if the Gerfaulcon ſhal but loſe two or three drops of bloud, it is mortall, and the *Hawk* will die ſodainly after; which to prevent, if the bloud proceed from any pounce, which is moſt ordinary, then upon the inſtant hurt, you ſhall take a little hard Merchants waxe, and drop it upon the ſoare, and it will preſently ſtop it; if it be upon any other part of the *hawkes* body, you ſhall clap thereunto a little of the ſoft Down of a Hare, and it wil immediatly ſtanch it; and without theſe two things, a good Faulconer ſhould never go, for they are to be uſed in a moment. And thus much of the Hawk, and her Diſeaſes.

# *Of Bees.*

## CHAP. 1.

### *Of the nature, ordering, and preſervation of Bees.*

OF all the Creatures which are behovefull for the uſe of man, there is none more neceſſary, wholeſome, or more profitable then the Bee, nor any leſſe troubleſome, or leſſe chargable. To ſpeake then firſt of the nature of Bees, it is a creature gentle, loving, and familiar about the man, which hath the ordering of them, ſo he come neat, ſweet, and cleanly amongſt them: otherwiſe, if he have ſtrong, and ill ſmelling ſavours about him, they are curſt and malicious, and will ſting ſpitefully: they are exceeding induſtrious and much given to labour, they have a kind of government amongſt themſelves, *as it were a well-ordered common-wealth, every one obeying and following their King or Commander, whoſe voice* (if you lay your ear to the hive) *you ſhall diſtingniſh from the reſt, being louder and greater, and beating with a more ſolemn meaſure*: they delight to live amongſt the ſweeteſt hearbes and flowers that may be; eſpecially, Fennel, and wall Gilly-flowers, and therefore their beſt dwellings are in Gardens: and in theſe Gardens, or neer adjoyning thereunto, would be divers Fruit trees growing, chiefly plum-trees, or peach-trees; in which, when they caſt, they may knit, without taking any far flight, or wandring to finde out their reſt: thus Garden alſo would be well fenced, that no Swine nor other Cattle may come therein, as well for overthrowing their *hives*, as alſo for offending them

The nature of Bees.

them with all other ill ſavours. They are alſo very tender, and may by no means endure any cold: wherefore you muſt have a great reſpect to have their houſes exceeding warme, cloſe, and tight, both to keep out the froſts and ſnowes, as alſo the wet and rain; which if it once enter into the Hive, it is a preſent deſtruction.

Of the Bee-Hive.

To ſpeak then of the Bee-hive, you ſhall know there be divers opinions touching the ſame, according to the cuſtomes and natures of Countries; for in the Champain Countries, where there is very little ſtore of *woods*, they make their hives of long Rie-ſtraw, the roules being ſowed together with Bryers; *and theſe Hives are large and deep, and even proportioned like a* Sugar-loaf, *and croſſe-bar'd within, with flat ſplints of wood, both above and under the midſt part*: in other Champaine Countries where there wanteth Rye-ſtraw, they make them of Wheat-ſtraw, as in the Weſt Countries, *and theſe Hives are of a good compaſſe, but very low and flat, which is naught, for a Hive is better for his largeneſſe, and keepeth out rain beſt when it is ſharpeſt.* In the *Wood-Countries* they make them of cloven haſſels, watteld about, broad ſplints of Aſh, and ſo formed, as before I ſaid, like a *Sugar-loafe*.

And theſe *hives* are of all other the beſt, ſo they bee large and ſmooth within, for the ſtraw hive is ſubject to breed Mice, and nothing deſtroyeth Bees ſooner then they, yet you muſt be governed by your ability, and ſuch things as the foyl affords.

Of the trimming of the *Hive*.

Now for the *wood-hive* which is the beſt, you ſhall thus trim and prepare it for your Bees: you ſhall firſt make a ſtiffe morter of Lime and Cow-dung, mixed together; and then having croſſe-barred the Hive within, daube the outſide of the Hive with the morter, at leaſt

leaſt three inches thick, down cloſe unto the ſtone, ſo that the leaſt ayre may not come in: then taking a Rye-ſheafe, or Wheat-ſheafe, or two that is balted, and not thraſhed, and chuſing out the longeſt Straws, bind the ears together in one lump, put it over the Hive, and ſo as it were thatch it all over, and fix it cloſe to the Hive with an old hoop, or garth, and this will keepe the Hive inwardly as warm as may be: alſo, before you lodge any Bee in your Hive, *you ſhall perfume it with Iuniper, and rub it all within with Fennel, Iſope, and Time-flowers and alſo the ſtone upon which the Hive ſhall ſtand.*

Now for the placing of your Hives, you ſhall take three long thick ſtakes, cut ſmooth and plain upon the heads, and drive them into the earth triangular wiſe, ſo that they may be about two foot above the ground: *then lay over them a broad ſmooth paving ſtone, which may extend every way over the ſtakes above halfe a foot: and upon the ſtone ſet your Hive, being leſſe in compaſſe then the ſtone by more then ſix inches every way; and ſee the door of your Hive ſtand directly upon the riſing of the Morning Sun, inclining a little unto the Southward: and be ſure to have your Hives well ſheltred from the North-winds, and generally from all tempeſtuous weather: for which purpoſe if you have ſheads to draw over them in the winter, it is ſo much the better. And you ſhall place your Hives in orderly rowes one before another, keeping cleane Allies between them every way, ſo as you may walke and view each by it ſelf ſeverally.*

The place of Hives.

Now for the caſting of your Bees, it is earlier or later in the year, according to the ſtrength and goodneſſe of the flock, or the warmth of the weather. The uſuall time for caſting, is from the beginning of *May*, till the

middle of *July*: and in all that time you muſt have a vigilant eye, or elſe ſome ſervant to watch their riſing, leaſt they fly away, and knit in ſome obſcure place far from your knowledge: yet if you pleaſe, *you may know which Hives are ready to caſt a night before they do caſt, by laying your ear after the Sun-ſet to the Hive, and if you hear the Maſter-Bee above all the reſt, in a higher and more ſolemn note, or if you ſee them lie forth upon the ſtone, and cannot get into the Hive, then be ſure that ſtock will caſt within few hours after.*

As ſoon as you can perceive the Swarm to riſe, and are got up into the ayre (*which will commonly be in the height and heat of the Sun*) you ſhall take a braſſe *Baſon, Pan or Candleſtick*, and making a tinkling noiſe thereupon, and they are ſo delighted with muſick, that by the ſound therof they will preſently knit upon ſome branch or bough of a tree. Then when they are all upon one cluſter, you ſhall take a new ſweet Hive well dreſt, and rub'd with Honey and Fennel, and ſhake them all into the Hive; then having ſpred a fair ſheet upon the ground, ſet the Hive thereon, and cover it all clean over cloſe with the ſheet, and ſo let it ſtand till after Sun ſet, at which time the Bees being gathered up to the top of the Hive (as their nature is) you ſhall ſet them upon the ſtone, having rub'd it well with Fennel, and then daube it cloſe round about with *Lime* & *Dung* mixt together, and onely leave them a dore or two to iſſue out and in at. There be ſome Stockes which will caſt twice or thrice, and four times in a year, but it is not ſo good, for it will weaken the ſtock too much; therefore to keepe your ſtocks in ſtrength and goodneſſe, it is good not to ſuffer any to caſt above twice at the moſt.

Again, you ſhall with pieces of Brick, or other ſmooth

ſtones,

ſtones, raiſe the ſtock in the night three or foure inches above the ſtone, and then daube it cloſe again, and the Bees finding houſe-room will fall to work within, and not caſt at all; and then will their Stock be worth two others: and in the ſame manner, if you had the yeare before any ſmall Swarms, which are likely to caſt this yeer, or if you have any early Swarms this yeer, which are likely to caſt at the latter end of the yeer: both which are often found to be the deſtruction of the Stocks: in either of theſe caſes, you ſhall enlarge the Hive, as it is before ſaid, by raiſing it up from the ſtone, and it will not only keep them from caſting, but make the Stock better, & of much more profit, for that Hive which is of the moſt weight, is of the beſt price.

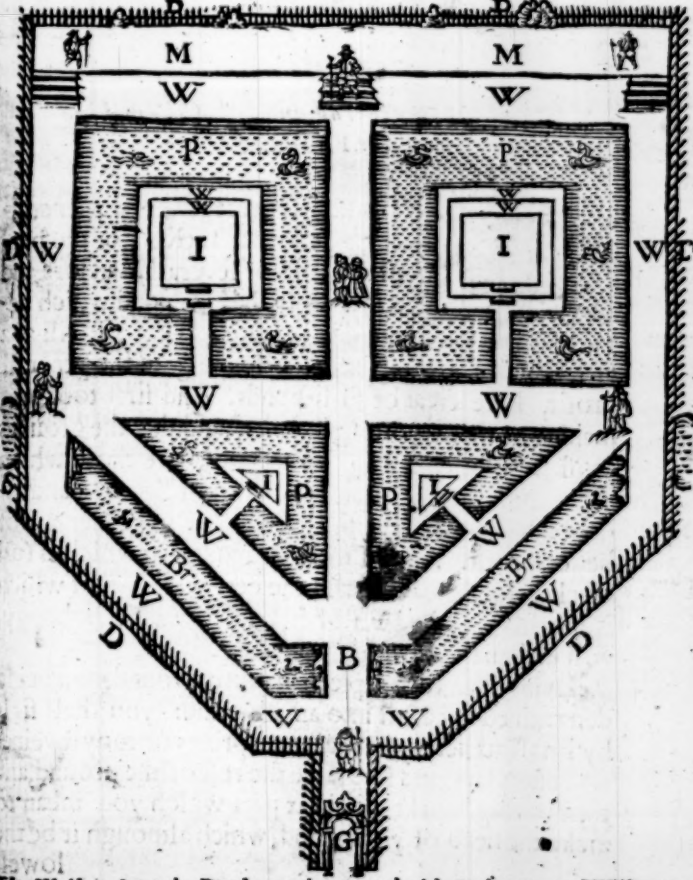
Now when you have mark't out thoſe old Stockes which you intend to ſell (*for the oldeſt is fitteſt for that purpoſe*) you ſhal know that the beſt time to take them is at *Michaelmas*, before any froſts hinder their labour: and you ſhal take them ever from the ſtone in the dark of night, when the ayr is cold, and either drowne them in water, or ſmother them with Fusbals; for to chaſe them from their Hives as ſome do, is naught, becauſe all ſuch Bees as are thus frighted from their Hives, doe turn robbers, and ſpoyl other Stocks, becauſe that time of the yeer will not ſuffer them to labour and get their own livings. Of felling Hives.

Now if you have any weak Swarms which comming late in the yeer cannot gather ſufficient of Winter proviſion; in this caſe, you ſhall feed ſuch Stocks by daily ſmearing the ſtone before the place of their going in and out, with *honey* and *Roſe-water* mixt together, and ſo you ſhall continue to do all the ſtrength of winter, till the warmth of the Spring, and the Sun-ſhine bring

forth of flowers for them to labour upon. You ſhall continually look that no Mice, Dares, and ſuch like vermine breed about Hives, for they are poyſonous, and will make Bees forſake their Hives.

Now laſtly, if any of your ſtocks happen to dye in the Winter (*as amongſt many, ſome muſt quaile*) you ſhall not by any means ſtir the ſtock, but let it remain till the Spring, that you ſee your Bees begin to grow buſie; then take up the dead Stock, and trim it clean from all filth, but by no means ſtir or cruſh any of the Combs: then daſh the Combs, and beſprinkle them, and beſmear all the inſide of the Hive with Honey, Roſe-water, and the juyce of Fennell mixt together, and daube alſo the ſtone therewith. Alſo then ſet down the Hive again, and daube it as if it had never been ſtirred, and be well aſſured, that the firſt Swarm which ſhall riſe, either of your own, or of any Neighbour of yours within the compaſſe of a mile, it will knit in no place, but within that Hive, and ſuch a ſtock will be worth five others, becauſe they find half their worke finiſht at their firſt entrance into the Hive, and this hath beene many times approved by thoſe of the moſt agproved'ſt experience. And thus much touching the Bee and his Nature.

*A Platforme for Ponds, which the Printer hath added to this enſuing diſcourſe, for the better ſatisfaction and delight of ſuch as having a convenient plat of ground for the ſame purpoſe, ſhall be deſirous to make any Ponds for the increaſe and ſtore of Fiſh.*




The Walkes about the Ponds may be planted with Fruit trees or VVillowes.

# *Of Fiſhing.*

## CHAP. 1.

### *Of Fiſhing in generall, and firſt of the making of the Fiſh-pond.*

FOraſmuch as great Rivers do generally belong either to the King, or the perticular Lords of ſeverall Mannors, and that it is onely the Fiſh pond which belongeth to private perſons, I will as a thing moſt belonging to the generall profit, here treat of Fiſh-ponds. And firſt touching making of them, you ſhall underſtand that the grounds moſt fit to be caſt into Fiſh-ponds, are thoſe which are either mariſh, boggy, or full of Springs, and indeed moſt unfit either for grazing, or any other uſe of better profit. And of theſe grounds, that which is full of clear ſprings will yeeld the beſt water: that which is mariſh will feed Fiſh beſt, and that which is boggy, will defend the Fiſh from ſtealing.

Having then ſuch a piece of waſte grounnd, and being determined to caſt it into a Fiſh-pond: you ſhall firſt by ſmall trenches, draw all the ſprings or moyſt veines into one place, and ſo draine the reſt of the ground, and then having markt out that part which you mean to make the head of your pond, which although it be the lowe-

lowest part in the true levell of the ground, yet you must make it the highest in the eye; you shall first cut the trench of your flood-gate, so as the water may have a swift fall, when you mean at any time to let it out; and then on each side of the trench drive in great stakes of sixe foot in length, and sixe inches square, of Oke, Ashe, or Elme, but Elme is the best: and these you must drive in rowes within foure foot one of another, at least four foot into the earth, as broad and as farre off each side the Floodgate as you intend the head of your Pond shall goe: then beginne to digge your pond of such compasse as your ground will conveniently give leave, and all the earth you digge out of the Pond, you shall carry and throw amongst the stakes, and with strong rammers, ramme the earth hard between them, till you have covered all the stakes; then drive in as many moe new stakes besides the heads of the first, and then ramme more earth over and above them also; & thus do, with stakes above stakes, til you have brought the head sides to such a convenient height as is fitting. And in all this worke have an especiall care, that you make the inside of your banks so smooth, even, and strong, that no current of the water may wear the earth from the stakes.

You shall digge your Fish-pond not above eight foot deep, and so as it may carry not above sixe foot water.

You shall pave all the bottom and banks of the Pond with large sods of Flot-grasse, which naturally growes under water, for it is a great feeder of Fish: and you shall lay them very close together and pinne them down fast with small stakes and windings. You shall upon one side of the Pond, in the bottome, stake

fast divers Bavens or Faggots of brush wood, wherein your fish shall cast their spawne, for that will defend it from destruction; & at another place you shal lay sods upon sods, with the grasse sides together, in the bottom of the pond, for that will nourish and breed Eeles: and if you stick sharp stakes likewise by every side of the Pond, that wil keep theeves from robbing them. When you have thus made your ponds, and have let in the water, you shall then store them. Carpe, Breame and Tench by themselves, and Pike, Pearch, Eele, and Tench by themselves: for the Tench being the fishes physition is seldome devoured: also in all ponds you shall put good store of Roch, Dace, Loch, and Menow; for they are both food for the greater fishes, and also not uncomely in any good mans dish.

You shall to every melter put three Spawners, and some put five, and in three years the increase will be great, but in five hardly to be destroyed. And thus much for Ponds and their storings.

## CHAP. 11.

### *Of the taking of all sorts of Fish, with Nets, or otherwise.*

IF you wil take fish with little or no trouble, you shal take of *Salarmoniake* a quarter of an ounce, of young *Chives* as much, and as much of a Calves Kell, and beat them in a morter until it be all one substance, and then make Pellets thereof, and cast them into any corner of the Pond, and it wil draw thither all the Carpe, Bream, Chevin, or Barbell, that are within the water, then cast your shove-net beyond them, and you shal take choice at your pleasure. If you will take Roch, Dace, or any small kind of Fish, take Wine Lees, and mixe it with Oyl, and hang it in a chimney corner till it be dry, or

looke

look black, and then putting it into the water, they will come ſo abundantly to it that you may take them with your hand. If you will take Trout, or Grailing, take two pound of wheat bran, half ſo much of white Peaſe, and mixing them with ſtrong Brine, beat it till it come to a perfect paſte: then put pellets thereof into any corner of the water, and they will reſort thither, ſo as you may caſt your net about them at your pleaſure. But if you will take either Pearch or Pike, you ſhall take ſome of a Beaſts Liver, black Snails, yellow Butterflies, Hogs bloud, and Opoponax, beat them altogether, and having made a paſte thereof, put it into the water, and be aſſured that as many as are within forty paces thereof will preſently come thither, and you may take them at your pleaſure.

Laſtly, if you take eight drams of Cock-ſtones, and twice ſo much of the Kirnels of Pynaple trees burnt, and beat them well together, and make round balls thereof, and put it into the water, either freſh or ſalt, any Salmon or great Fiſh will preſently reſort thither, you may take them either with net or otherwiſe.

Alſo, it is a moſt approved experiment, that if you take bottles made of Hay, and green Oziers, or willow mixt together, and ſink them downe in the middeſt of your Pond, or by the bank ſides, and ſo let them reſt two or three days, having a cord ſo faſtned unto them that you may twitch them upon land at your pleaſure: and believe it, all the good Eeles which are in the pond wil come into thoſe Bottles: & you ſhal take them moſt abundantly: and if you pleaſe to bait thoſe Bottles, by binding up Sheep guts, or other garbage of Beaſts within them, the Eeles will come ſooner, and you may

may draw them oftner, and with better aſſurance: there be other wayes beſides theſe to take Eeles, as with Weels, with the Eele-ſpear, or with bobbing for them with great wormes; but they are ſo generally knowne and practiſed, and ſo much inferiour to this already ſhewed, that I hold it a needleſſe and vaine labour to trouble your ears with the repetition of the ſame; and the rather, ſith in this work I have laboured only to declare the ſecrets of every knowledge, and not to run into any large circumſtance of thoſe things which are moſt common and familiar to all men. And thus much of Fiſh and Fiſh-Ponds, and their generall knowledge.

Now as touching the Angle, and the ſecrets thereto belonging, you ſhall find it at large handled in the next Book, called *Countrey Contentments.*

FINIS.